

THE
ROYAL GRAMMAR

Reformed into

A more Easie Method,
FOR THE
Better Understanding
OF

The English:

AND

More Speedy Attainment

OF THE

LATIN TONGUE.

Nullum Minus afferre majus meliusve possumus, quam si erudiamus Juventutem, iis praesertim moribus atque temporibus, quibus ita prolapsa est; ut omnium opibus refraganda & coercenda sit. Cic.

IMPRIMATUR,

March 6. 1694.

Humph. Hady.

L O N D O N,

Printed by J. Heptinstall, for J. and J. Churchill, at the
Black-Swan in Pater-Noster-Row, MDCXCV.

Mr. Churchill,

UPon perusing this Grammar, I conceive it to be excellently well contrived for the Perfect and more easie Learning of the Latin Tongue.

*London,
Nov. 6th. -95.*

EDW. GLOUCESTER.

Mr. Churchill,

I Have perused this Grammar with great Satisfaction; and it's my Opinion, that for its Brevity, Exactness and Perspicuity, it so fully answers it self, as to deserve the thankfull Acceptation of all that either teach or learn the Latin Tongue.

*London,
Nov. 6th. -95.*

*Ric. Wright Master of the
Free School in St. James's
in the Fields.*

*Lately Printed for, and Sold by A. and J. Churchill, at
the Black Swan in Pater-Noster-Row.*

A View of Universal History, from the Creation, to the Year of Christ 1695. wherein the most memorable Persons and Things in the known Kingdoms and Countries of the World, are set down in several Columns by way of Synchronism, according to their proper Centuries and Years: By Francis Tallents, sometime Fellow of Magdalen College, Cambridge. The whole graven in 16 Copper-plates, each 15 Inches deep, and 22 broad; bound up into Books, the Sheets lined. A Work performed with great Care and Exactness. Price 16. s.

THE PREFACE.

IT being the duty of all Men in whatever Art or Profession, to consider what farther Improvements may therein be made for promoting the benefit of Mankind; in pursuit of this generous Design, it has been the Endeavour of several worthy Persons, since Lilly's Accidence, and Erasmus his Syntax were receiv'd as the first Model of Grammatical Institution, by various Methods to facilitate the progress of Youth in the Latin Tongue: in which aim, as some have succeeded very well; so scarce any have been so unfortunate, as not to have contributed something thereto; at least to have deserved the Commendation of having well intended. In this farther Attempt all the former Aids have been summon'd together, as well those which our own, or foreign Nations could afford; and particularly, a regard has all along been had to the ingenious Author of the Nouvelle Methode pour apprendre facilement la Langue Latine; as was also done many years since in the Edition of the Oxford Grammar, at the instance of that Great and Excellent Person Dr. FELL, Dean of Christ-Church, and ever memorable Bishop of OXFORD: who being a most zealous Promoter of all usefull and ingenious Learning, as well as an eminently venerable Example of a holy Life, thought not too low, because fundamental Parts of knowledge unworthy of his Counselor beneath his Cares; which could, both stoop to the meanest, and at the same time were equal to the highest concerns in Church or State. The Grammar by him then printed, was enlarged with many usefull Observations, which being for the most part in Latin, may continue still advantageous to young Academics; but it was at that time suggested, that ano-

The PREFACE.

Whether Method might be better adapted to the Capacities
 of such in Grammar Schools, as must learn Latin first,
 before they can either understand Latin Rules, or Latin Ex-
 planations upon them. Those that heretofore wrote Gram-
 mars in Latin, did so for the sake of Masters; who in
 their several Countries might from thence frame Rules in
 the Vulgar Tongue for the use of the Natives: It being
 unreasonable (as Dr. Busby has well observ'd) that the
 Principles of an unknown Language should be taught
 in an unknown Tongue, and that the Learner should
 be suppos'd to understand what he is going to learn, be-
 cause he does not understand it. It was therefore his
 wish, that for the use of English Scholars such a Gram-
 mar might be perfected in English. This Grammar ac-
 cordingly is perfectly English in all it's parts, and was in-
 tended upon all other Accounts to be perfectly exact too:
 though by a Fate incident to all humane Works, it be not
 fully accomplish'd. For upon the review, some things ap-
 pear to have been omitted, and others capable of being
 made yet more plain and easy, which may hereafter perhaps
 be consider'd; but for the main 'tis hoped, that as it cost
 the Compiler no small Pains, so upon trial it may do no
 small service as well to our ingenious Youth, as to those
 most worthy Men their Masters, who have been con-
 sent to undertake an Employment so very laborious to them-
 selves, and of so great Importance to the Publick, and ge-
 nerally for such a disproportionate Encouragement. More
 pity to the Teacher as well as Learner would justify the
 Charity, if not excuse the Defects of this undertaking;
 the end of which is with multiply'd advantage to lessen both
 their Labours, and that not only by the Methodical Dis-
 poseure, but the Paucity of the Rules, which (abstracting
 from the Notes) are but a small portion of a little Volume.
 But if any thing either in the Method or the Notion
 shall seem new or unusual, the reason thereof is either gi-
 ven upon the place, or will in it self be obvious to the ju-
 dicious Peruser, who is desir'd to believe, that no change
even

The PREFACE.

even in the smallest Matters hath been made, but upon good, tho' not perhaps always equally momentous, Considerations; yet always so unbiass'd, that neither OLD nor NEW, but the sole motive of what was BEST, did ever preponderate.

As to the order wherein Grammar may be most advantageously taught, 'tis advis'd, 1. That the Scholar without any previous Learning over within Book (as 'tis call'd) should immediately begin with the Declensions. And when he has perfectly learn'd the first, that he be put to learn according to the Example such words out of the Vocabulary, as signifie things familiar and well known. By this means he will every day gain new Words, and so much the faster, as he has more Companions join'd with him in the same Exercise, be sensible of the use of what he learns, and with no small delight perceive his own Progress. When he is perfect in this, he will with more ease go through the other Declensions in the same manner; which when he has done, it will be necessary to consider them all comparatively by the little Table p. 10. observing in what Terminations, they agree, and wherein they differ, and acquainting him that these various Sounds at the end of Latin Nouns do answer in the Particles OF, TO, FOR, &c. set before the Names of things in English.

2. He may be acquainted with Adjectives or Adnouns, their manner of Inflection, together with their Nature and Use, which by suitable Explications from obvious and sensible Things, and shewing a Parallel in English Constructions, a Child will presently apprehend. The Comparison of Nouns may in the first course be omitted, or but lightly touch'd. Then the Pronoun may be learn'd, its different Inflection from the Noun observ'd, its use shown, and the English Pronouns answering to them noted, passing by the Divisions and Compositions, and whatever may seem more difficult.

3. From hence immediately to the Verb SUM, which is plac'd first, as being the general Type of all others.

Wherein

The PREFACE.

Wherein the various Terminations may be shew'd to mean the same *a*, I, THOU, HE, &c. and the Auxiliary Signs do in English. In the Conjugations following, the Active and Passive Forms are plac'd in view of each other, and each Conjugation apart. When the first is perfectly learn'd, he is to be exercis'd in forming regular Verbs according to it; and so on, till he is perfect in them all; and then to make the same comparative Review, as before in the Declensions; passing by the Division of Verbs, and the Table of Irregulars, till a more fitting Occasion. It will be convenient, if he can write or scrawl never so miserably, to put him to enter in a little Paper-book all the Nouns and Verbs with their Significations, which he is to decline, that he may betimes be inur'd to an exactness in Spelling, which to some (tho' otherwise apprehensive enough) is a slow and difficult Attainment.

4. Having proceeded thus far in the Noun and Verb, which is little more than mere exercise of Memory in retaining the Original Forms of both, and but a sporting of Fancy in churning other words to them by a riming imitation; he may return to the beginning of the Grammar, and be taught the Nature and Difference of Letters from the Formation of them; which will ever after be the greatest security to true Spelling, and so onwards through the rest of the Rudiments in Order, with perpetual Explications and Examinations suitable to the Capacity of the Learner: till by several Reviews and frequent Repetitions, of things already learn'd he is fit for the Syntax.

5. In the Syntax it will be the greatest speed to stay upon every Rule, till it be well understood, and all the Uses of it exemplify'd by turning English into Latin, till no Error appears. The English should be occasionally dilated, and express things obvious and familiar; such wherewith the Scholar may at that time be most affected, or whereby he may be instructed in some usefull Knowledge relating to some present Circumstance or Occurrence, which will never be wanting. If the ingenious Instructor pleases to give him-
self

The PREFACE.

Self this little Trouble, he will find the benefit thereof in his Scholars Advancement not only in Grammar Rules, but in his quicker Apprehension and Observation of things; which in every step of Learning ought to be mainly intended. The English to be turn'd into Latine should be written in a Column, word by word on the inner Margin of the left-hand Page, and in every line should be set down before each Noun, Adnoun, Verb, &c. even to the smallest Particle, what it is (in contracted words for Brevities sake) and what relation it bears to any other word in the Sentence. The Latin to be made should be set in the inner Margin of the other Page, word for word answering to the English, with two or three first words of each Rule annexed, by which the Construction of each word was directed. By this means no word in English will escape the Scholars observation. By this he will see what Particles in English are mere signs, and not to be express'd in Latin but by Terminations; and besides his more speedy understanding the Latin Syntax, he will more exactly comprehend the Construction and Propriety of his Mother Tongue, wherein 'twill be a greater shame to be ignorant. In the Review of the Syntax, 'twill be expedient, that in the repeating each succeeding Rule, the Dictate to be turn'd into Latin should contain Examples of all the Rules preceding, at least of so many as the Learners Ability and the time will allow; and that the last finishing Exercise should comprize instances of every Rule and Exception in the whole Syntax. All this while the Scholar is to be taught nimbly to turn his Dictionary, and directed how to examine and chuse each Word; and then as his Instructor finds seasonable, he may proceed to the Rules for Genders, and the reading of Latin Authors. What else may be thought advisable, is either mention'd occasionally in the Advertisements and Notes inserted in the Grammar, or left to the Judgment of the Learned Master; who will in this, and all other parts of Grammatical Institution need no better direction, than his own Discretion.

There

The PREFACE.

There is but one thing more, but of the greatest moment, which begs the Reader's Patience, and that is, The Care of the Scholars Morals. A School, tho' it takes its denomination from Grammar; in its principal intendment both is, and in its ultimate effect ought to be *Ψυχολογική*, A CURE OF SOULS: and tho' it seems not to be so much consider'd, as it deserves; in those Nurseries of Youth that our Pulpits owe all their Success or Disappointments: And not only so, but if the greatest Perplexities and most dangerous Convulsions, that at any time have befallen any Government, be trac'd to their original; they will be found chiefly to spring from the defect of due Means and proper Methods in the education of Youth. The teaching a little Latin and Greek, how much soever those noble Languages may conduce to polite Literature, would not deserve the name of Christian Education; were not at the same time the greatest regard had to the subduing of disorderly Passions, the rectifying of perverse Inclinations, the implanting of virtuous Habits, and the securing of them by religious Principles, which are attainments far beyond all the most curious Arts and profoundest Sciences in the World. All are not by their Parents design'd, and many by Nature were never made for great Scholars; but by what unhappy error soever it so frequently happens, that some are marr'd in the first, and others so little mended in the second Formation, most certain it is, that GOD and Nature too intended all for honest and good Men. This great end of Education may perhaps be least propos'd by many, who being not conscious of any Soul within themselves, but what serves the Offices of a mere animal Life; do breed up their Children with much the same consideration, as they begat them: and looking upon them rather as Heirs to their Avarice or Ambition, than as born to the hopes of a better World; have commonly no higher aim in all that is taught them, but what may reach the base ends of Pelf and Pride. But infinitely better will it appear one day

The PREFACE.

to have been, that instead of being the most learned Philosopher, the greatest Wit, or compleatest Artist, one had been born a mere natural Fool, or bred an honest Day-labourer; than with all the advantages of an ingenious and virtuous Education, to live onely as a cumbersome Burden to the earth, a Pest to civil Society, a shame and reproach to humane Nature, and after all, to die as a hopeles Reprobate, rejected of GOD, abhorr'd by all wise and good Men, and scorn'd by all the World. There have been several dolefull Complaints lately publish'd concerning the genetal decay of Piety and Degeneracy of Manners, for which if there be any just ground; a dreadfull woe lies on them, by whom these Offences come: wherein they also must expect to bear their part; who may, but do not endeavour to remove them. In which endeavour much might perhaps be expected from those that are entrusted with the Education of Youth: but the discipline of Schools, considering their present Constitution, and that of the times together, will prove as much too weak to withstand corruptions so universally prevailing. For what can the precarious Authority of a few Persons (tho' the best in the World) do in stemming the tide of general Custom supported by domestick Example, or strengthened by connivence; extraordinary Antidotes must those be, that shall put any stop to a Plague, when the whole Region of the Air is infected; when almost every Habitation shall become a Pest-house, and Sick and Sound promiscuously give and receive the Contagion.

Concerning the Art of Education, so much has been written, and so well; that as to the preceptive Part scarce any thing seems to be wanting, unless it be an exact, orderly and brief Digest of the wisest Maximes scatter'd up and down in so many Volumes; but the effect still manifestly demonstrates a deficiency either in the Methods of Application, or in the Means of putting them in Execution. A just Idea therefore of a School design'd for a more successfull Education of Children, and especially those

The PREFACE.

those of the Nobility and greater Gentry, (among whom a Reformation ought to take its first rise,) seems to comprise these four essential Requisites.

I. That it be an entire Enclosure and a strict Retirement from the rest of Mankind.

II. That the Building be so modell'd in the distribution of its several Lodgings, Apartments and Offices; and the Gardens, Walks, and all Conveniences for proper and reasonable Recreations be so dispos'd, that the Conversation of all persons therein from the President down to the Porter may be open to the common observation, and that no one may eat or drink, play or study, talk or whisper, sleep or wake, no nor (if it were possible) so much as think one thought in secret.

III. That it be of a very ample Reception, capable to entertain at least four, and so much the better, if five, six, even to eight hundred, besides Directors, Masters, Inspectors, Assistants, Attendants, &c.

IV. That it be of such fair Endowments, as persons every way the most accomplish'd in the whole Nation for Virtue, Learning, and exact experience in the World may accept as preferments of great Trust and Honour, and be glad to assume the Charge, as the remaining business of their Life.

These are only the grand Lineaments of this Model, and what ever shall be farther necessary to compleat it in all its Parts and Proportions, must have respect to one or other of these. The reasons of all which, tho' obvious enough to all such, as have been any time conversant in affairs of this Nature, and from a serious reflexion upon the inconveniencies of the present way, have apply'd themselves to think of suitable Remedies; yet in due respect to these generous Persons, who are principally concern'd to promote a design of so great Honour to their Families, as well as inestimable Benefit to the Publick; they are briefly these.

1. It is propos'd, that this Society be private as to the World, but at the same time to have no Privacy at all within it self. For Mankind is never like to be so amend-

The PREFACE.

ed, but that the best will have some defects; and the worst will ever make the greater number: nor will humane Nature ever be so chang'd, as that the tenderest Age, and in the highest Fortune too, will not be soonest, and (in respect to the Publick) most dangerously deprav'd. Therefore a strict retirement from the ill-nurture, undisciplin'd and ill-principled part of Mankind will at all times be an indispensable circumstance of the good Education of Children, and so much the more, as the Age is more dissolute.

2. Its having no privacy within it self, will be the most probable means of preventing all opportunities of Evil, while the Eyes and Ears of all are a constant Guard upon one another. Secrecy is the great Ambuscade of the Spirit of darkness, the Subterfuge of all the sneaking Villanies that are committed in the World; and those that neither startle at the Checks of their own Consciences, nor tremble at the presence of an all-seeing GOD; are yet afraid of a Child, nor dare trust the Eye of an honest Servant. That certainly is the wisest Discipline in any sort of Government; which instead of punishing Offences, makes it its first and greatest care that there be no Offenders. To which end Children that are intended to be well-bred, should never be out of some Governour's sight; their very Recreations do as much require a Tutor, as their Studies; and every part of their Conversation ought to be under the Conduct of some proper Guide, that they may still be learning something usefull, or untaught what is amiss; for either of which purposes, occasions will never be wanting, since there are very few actions so indifferent, wherein some Virtue or other is not concern'd.

3. The Foundation shall be very capacious; because the same number of Persons, that in every part of the Administration would be absolutely necessary for the well educating of Six-score, will in the Method design'd serve even as well for Six hundred. Besides that a great number of Scholars will afford a larger Field for a gene-

The PREFACE

rous Emulation; wherein to excell, will accumulate also greater degrees of Honour: a right Notion of which imprinted early on the mind of a Child, will all the remaining days of his life be a very great security to his being an honest Man; without which, none, whatever Enother Titles are, can be truly Honourable, and a Coat of Arms loses all its Blazon, when it becomes the infamous Badge of a **GREAT KNAVE** or a **GREAT FOOL**. Nor is it of the least consideration, that so numerous a Concourse of Youth of the Quality here intended, will lay the Foundation of a general Friendship and Unanimity among all the Nobility and principal Gentry of the Nation, by their being bred up all as it were in one Family, and educated in the same Notions and Principles.

4. For the number of Persons to be engaged in the management of this affair, will be enough at present, and in general to say, That all the respective Charges, Offices and Employments ought to be so distinctly allotted, and committed to so many hands, that every person may be able completely and chearfully to discharge the Duty of his Station, and not (as it is now) be overlaid with more toll and care, than 'tis possible for any Man of the greatest Ability, Vigour and Industry with Comfort and Continuance to undergo. This is a charge of that Nature, where nothing must be done in a slack or pertunctory manner; but the whole Work from the first Spring, to the Fly or Balance be carried on with that perpetual Vigilance and Activity, that steddiness and regularity of Motion, as in the most elaborate Piece of Clock-work, wherein a defect of the least member of the Machine derives a disorder upon the whole Train.

5. As to the Abilities and Qualifications of those that are to be entrusted with a charge of this moment; no employment in the Nation (*Placeat tibi quiesq; licebit*) doth either in respect to its difficulty or its consequence demand greater. Any Fool may get a Boy, but 'tis a thing of
that

The PREFACE.

that skill to make Boys Men, that many never attain to it all the days of their life, being at 30 or 40 onely greater Boys, and in proportion to their Age verier Fools than they were at 10 or 12. Bulk and Stature is onely so much brutal Matter borrow'd from the Shambles; and if the value of a Man were to be taken by the Hand or Girt, as Cattle are measur'd; Apicius might be the best, as he is to some the greatest Tutor. The Ordinary and the Tavern might serve instead of all other Academies, and Education then would onely be another sort of foddering; the work of a Cook assisted by the private Supplies of an ever-nursing Mother; who dreading lest the two-legged thing should be starv'd into too much Wit, has at length this Consolation for all her care, to behold with amazing Joy the once little Imp, now by about twenty years cramming, soaking and drouzing, improv'd into a hopefull Booby of near 6 foot high; from whence deducting the Kitchin-stuff and the Tailor's Garniture, the remainder is often nothing but Emptiness, or what's infinitely worse. But if those ingenious Statuaries deserv'd the admiration of their own, and the Fame of after-ages, who could carve a rude Block into humane Shape, and give life to Marble? how much more excellent, how far more wonderful must that performance be, which shall (beyond the Art of Prometheus) not animate a Lump of Clay, but convey a new Life into the Soul it self, mould a mute and ignorant Creature into an intelligent and sociable Man, adorn a naked and shapeless Faculty with all the Beauties of Wisdom and Science, transform rude Passions and bestial Inclinations into Habits of divine Virtue, and cure of the miserable ruins of a depraved Nature, erect a lively Image of the great CREATOR. Certainly could the progress of this mighty change be seen, and the vast difference be discern'd between the monstrous Deformities of a rude, ill-nurur'd and vicious Nature, compar'd with those Angelic Features, that adorn a Soul accomplish'd in Knowledge, Virtue and Holiness. Education in its perfection would

The PREFACE.

would appear even to any common Eye the highest reach of humane Art, and the Formation of the Mind the very next work to the creating it. And then 'tis left to the consideration of all that are able to judge in an affair of this Nature, whether any Abilities can be too great, or any person of what rank or quality soever too good to be employ'd in so high and so noble an Undertaking; unless it shall be thought, that the Art of destroying Mankind is more Heroical, then that of preserving them; or that the English are fallen into such a degenerate State, as (in comparison with Horses and Setting-dogs of better sort of Breed,) to be scarce worth the care and cost of Rearing. That there are many both useless and wastfull Persons among us, who live to the great detriment and mischief of the Publick, is a truth too sad to be deny'd; but still there is a Genius in the English People every way capable of as great things, as any Nation under Heaven; were it in all Orders and Degrees of Men excited, improv'd and apply'd to its proper work. In the greater Circles of Time some malignant Conjunctions happen; which like inauspicious Seasons in the shorter turns of the Year, produce great swarms of Insects and pernicious Vermin; but such errors of Nature are but of short continuance; and these Caterpillars of the Land, that live onely to destroy, will themselves by their own Vices be soon destroy'd; nor will it be long e'er that Spawn of Atheism and Irreligion, that has of late so much annoy'd the Country by stinking above-ground, will be rotting under it, and make way ('tis to be hop'd) for a better Generation. Had proper means been taken in training up all sorts of Persons suitably to their Rank, Capacity and design'd Course of Life; probably there had been none, or but little occasion for the presents Complaints. For as Boys are bred, such will the Men be; and those that never learn'd by due obedience how to govern themselves as from an internal Principle, will never afterwards be well govern'd by any one else. Virtue and good Breeding is a Law to it self,
and

The PREFACE.

and a great Support to the Peace and Prosperity of any Government; while Laziness and Luxury, and all the black Train of Vices that follow them, do shake the very Foundations of it; and are more dreadful dangers within the Bowels of a Nation, than any Invasion can be from without.

Lastly, As to the Rewards, they ought to be great and honourable; for such will the Importance of the work, and the merit of those, that shall be truly fit to undertake it, justly claim. Ut aliquis educationis rædium laboremq; suscipiat, non præmiis modis, verum etiam exquisitis adhortationibus impetrandum est, said Plin. Jun. A wise and intelligent Man being then about erecting a School at his own Expence. As the Wages are, such will the Workman be, and such also must be the Work done by him; there being very few of that Generosity and Ability too, as to decline Employments of more Ease, Honour and Advantage, only to serve their Country in an unprofitable Drudgery. If then this work be expected ever to be well done, the encouragements must be proportionable; and these should be Salaries fix'd and certain, issuing out of the common Treasury of the Society, and no private Gratuity or Present to be taken by any one in the Government, no nor so much as the least Vail by any Servant, under peril of being immediately discharg'd. This will prevent several miscarriages, that are too obvious, as well as too odious to be mention'd; but of that pernicious Effect, as ought in this and all other Governments with all Precautions imaginable to be avoided.

This is but a rude Sketch of a great and beautifull design, and only what could be represented in this narrow Room; if this be found acceptable, the entire Draught may, by GOD's assistance, in good time be finish'd, and from a review of the whole Scheme be demonstrated; that it is not only the most practicable, but the safest, speediest and cheapest Method of an ingenious and virtuous Education. Which if ever there happens a season so favour-

rable

The PREFACE.

able as to put in Execution; the whole Nation; by a new over-spreading of the Blessings of Heaven upon it; would soon appear with quite another Face, almost as different as the Horror of the Abyss did from the Beauty of the seventh Day: For if such a provision were once made for the Children of the Nobility and greater Gentry; the success of that would soon lead on to the Prosecution of the same measures proportionably in all the subordinate degrees of the People; so that no one, even to the Child of the wandering Beggar, if there could be any such found in the Nation, should want a suitable Reception, wherein he might be educated to some honest Employment, and instead of being a reproachfull Burden, become a benefit to himself, as well as the Publick. 'Tis upon this solid Foundation, more than all the Politicks in the World, that the Honour, Safety and Prosperity of any Nation, can subsist; and were this once well laid, we should none of us any more have need to rove into foreign parts to fetch home Vice and Folly instead of Virtue, Learning and good Breeding. The Dutch might keep their Manners; the French their Fashions, and Italy its Religion to it self, and it would then be travel enough for a true Englishman to make his grand Tour within the Dominions of the British Crowns, and in the Epitome of one happy Island, survey the Blessings of the Universe.

In the mean time, till these things shall be so happily accomplish'd; all good men who have this weighty charge of Education in their hands, will study to make the best use of the present Circumstances; wherein, if they fall short of their honest wishes, their labour will not be lost as to themselves, though it may be to others. For man can but propose well, and do his best endeavour; but in all things the glory of the Success is the uncommunicable Privilege of Almighty GOD, whose tremendous Name be ador'd by Men and Angels, now and ever, AMEN.

Sept. 25. 1693.

THE

THE Royal Grammar.

CHAP. I.

Of Letters.

I. Grammar is an Art of expressing the thoughts by proper words aptly joined in true writing and speaking.

Hence Grammar hath four parts: 1. Orthography, which teaches rightly to spell. 2. Prosody or Orthoepy, to pronounce exactly. 3. Etymology, to discern the nature and properties of single words. 4. Syntax, to join words agreeably in Sentences.

II. Orthography is the first part of Grammar, directing how to spell words with proper letters: As, Fire, not Fier; Lexio, not Lextio.

III. A Letter is a mark denoting the various motions or positions of the instruments of speech, either in the production or determination of sounds.

There are several different descriptions of a Letter; but this is agreeable to nature, and leads the learner to a distinct knowledge of the power of every character, and of the manner how each Sound is formed, first by Vowels in the Throat, and afterwards by Consonants variously modulated, as the Breath is passing forth by the Nose or Mouth.

IV. Letters are of two sorts; Vowels or Consonants.

V. A Vowel is a letter denoting a full sound made in the throat. Of these there are five; A, E, I, O, U; whereof I is sometimes supply'd by the Greek Y.

The Vowels are formed by the different Apertures of the Wind-pipe, and widening or contracting the Mouth; and that gradually from A the most open, to U the narrowest Sound of all. This was the reason of placing the Vowels in this order, and doth discover also their defect in number; there being more Vocal sounds, than characters to express them; and from this ambiguity more frequent errors too in writing and speaking, which the learned instructor may in some measure prevent by his private advertisement, till a more general remedy be found.

VI. Of Vowels compounded are made Bi-vowels [or Diphthongs] expressing the sound of two Vowels in one breath. In Latin five, *a, æ, au, ei, eu*; as, *Hei, euge* author *cœnæ*. In English more abundant.

AE, OE, in Latin words of Greek descent, answer to AI, OI, but are sounded as E: So *cœna*, as if it were *sen*. The luxuriance of the English, in the compounding of Vowels, appears in the Examples annex'd.

AI, Bait.	EI, Deceit.	IEW, View.	UE, Guest.
AY, Way.	EY, Obey.		UI, Fruit, Quill.
AE, Fraud.	EO, People.	OA, Load.	UO, Quotient.
AW, Thaw.	EU, Feud.	OI, Boil.	UEE, Queen.
	EW, Brew.	OO, Food.	UOI, Quoit.
EA, Meat.		OU, Proud.	
EAU, Heavy.	IE, Field.	OW, Grow.	
EE, Sleep.	IEU, Lie.	UA, Quake.	

To which, if the Combinations of W, with the Vowels, be added; as, *Swath, sweat*, &c. there will arise at least thirty varieties of Writing, when there is not half that number of Sounds; an encumbrance that ought to be remov'd.

VII. A Consonant is a Letter denoting the several motions and configurations of the parts of the mouth, whereby the sound of the Vowels is variously determin'd.

'Tis observ'd by Quintilian, *Nis enjunctis, auris est exigere litterarum sonos, non brevis minus, quam notiorum*. From this defect in the Ear proceeds that perpetual change in all Vulgar Tongues, (which also affects the pronunciation of the learned Languages:). For when Men speak they know not how, they must write they know not why.

To such as have a discerning Ear, the distribution of Letters according to the instruments of their formation will conduce much to facilitate *Orthography* in our own, as well as accelerate their progress in other languages. On which curious subject, the ingenious Reader may consult the accurate Speculations of Bishop William *Philosoph. Lang. p. 157*. For the present this Scheme may serve, wherein the powers of all Vowels (used

(used either way) are exemplified in words of different letters, but of the same sound.

1. A. a. open { Long. Hall, Bawl, caul, taught, thought, groat.
Short. Folly, Blossom, Puffer, Omission.
2. A. a. close { Long. Fare, Fade, Clamorous.
Short. Fat, Bad, Nasal.
3. E. e. — { Long. Meat, Seat, Mère, Sates.
Short. Net, Set, Ped.
4. I. i. open. Bice, climb, lie, light, dry. Divi, dici.
5. I. i. close { Long. Dile, Eve, Feet, People, Relief. 'Tis by Foreigners
Short. Bit, Wit. Hilaris, murtis. in Latin, Audite,
as if audite.
6. O. o. open. { Hot, Rod, Fifer, Doctor.
7. O. o. close. { So, Foe, Oath, Spoke, Snow. Domo.
8. U. u. open. But, Love, Bloud. Frustus, Nannus.
9. U. u. close. Root. Not founded in Latin by the English, but by the Italians commonly. Bonus, as Bonus. Maurus, as Maurus.
10. U. u. close. Dury, Beauty, true, new, view, fruit. Nura.

These Sounds are all contain'd in this Sentence. All far Men by and still store up good juice, and those for the Latin in this, the fine minds perfruct. From these single Vowels, nicely sounded, the nature and number of true Diphthongs may be easily discover'd, and thereupon a method contriv'd to rectify the monstrous absurdities in the English Spelling.

VIII. Consonants are divided into Liquids (call'd also Semi-vowels) Jg, ËL. eM. eN. aR. eS.

Semi-vowels so call'd, because some obscure Sound of a Vowel accompanies their Prolation; which is also intimated in their names eL. eM. &c. The like name and property hath eF, tho' not esteem'd a Semi-vowel. The name of Liquid imports that easy motion, whereby they simply glide away after a Mute in the same Syllable, and make no Position; as, Antipatris. But yet L. R. are chiefly reputed Liquids in Latin, the rest in Greek.

IX. Mutes are Consonants not sounding without a Vowel: Jg, Bee. Cee. Dee. eF. Vau. Gee. Jod. Ka. Pee. Qu. Tee.

1. C before a. e. u. is sounded as K; before a. i. as S, both in Latin and English. So Car. Cap. Cell. City. Before H it has a peculiar Sound; as, chance, cherry, clap, clark, church; but in Latin words (which are also of Greek Original) as K. So Charta, Chorda, as, Karta, Korda.
2. F. is a Sound near allied to F, but form'd by a stronger compression of the upper Teeth upon the lower Lip. as, Vafur. 'Tis therefore rang'd with the Mutes, and Fau or Va may express its Sound.
3. G. is a Letter which, among the Old Romans, in many words usurp'd the place of C, and changes its Sound before the Vowels, like it. Before a. e. u. it hath a guttural Sound; as, Gans, Gold, Gan, both in La-

sin and *English*; but before *E. I.* it has a dental hissing Sound, somewhat nearly express'd by *dxh*, or *dxj*, and this always in Latin, as, *Gemma, Gingiva*. Before the Greek *Y*, it retains the Greek Sound of *P*, as, *Gymnasium*; but in English its Sound is not uniform. For in the old native words of our language it keeps its ancient guttural Sound, as, *Get, Give, Anger, Begin*: but in modern adopted words it hisses, as in Latin. So *Gentle, Danger, Ginger*. Also observe, that to take off its hissing Sound, and make it guttural, 'tis sometimes written *Gh*, or *Gs*, as, *Ghesi, Guilt*.

4. *J* is a letter of an unvaried Sound before all Vowels, and is pronounc'd every-where, as *G* before *e, i*. So *Jinjer*, as *Ginger*. This letter may be call'd *Jod* or *Ja*, and if the two Sounds above were appropriated severally to *G* and *J*, there would be no small convenience in it as to Spelling and Pronunciation.

5. *Q* has ever *U* following it, but the Vowel is not pronounc'd but obscurely.

6. *T* with *H* after it has two Sounds; as, *Thin*, the tongue lightly touching the extremes of the upper teeth. *Then*, where the tongue reaches the palate and the roots of the teeth, making some mixture of *D*. Which difference is also noted by a distinct character in the Saxon Alphabet.

7. *H* is form'd by a compression of the lungs more strong, than what is used in natural expiration, to express the several degrees of which, there are three characters in the Hebrew Alphabet: and yet by *Priscian's* authority it has in Latin pass'd for no letter. Whereas besides some obscure Sound of its own, it mightily enforces that of other Vowels, and is manifestly a Consonant. After *W* 'tis pronounc'd before it, so *When, White*; as if *Hwen, Hwite*. 'Tis also sound'd instead of *K* before *N*. So *Knaue, Knight*; as if written *Hnaue, Hnight*.

8. *X* and *Z* are Bi-consonants, comprizing two Powers under one character. The former *CS*, as *Nex, Nesci*; or *GS*, as *Rex, Regis*. The latter *ds*; tho' the Sound of *d* be not now heard, but only a strong Sibilation.

9. *I* after Consonants is as the Vowel *I*: but before a Vowel is a Consonant; as, *Take, Tellow*. As a Vowel, 'tis a useless letter: as a Consonant *Ia* may express its power.

Of a Syllabe.

X. A Syllabe is the sound of one Vowel or Diphthong either with, or without Consonants: As, *E coe-lo des-cen-dir im-mor-ta-lis sa-pi-en-ti-a*.

1. In every word how many Vocal Sounds, so many Syllables. Vocal Sounds are Vowels (Simple, or Compound,) and Semi-vowels. Each of these requires in its formation a distinct motion of the *Pectoral Muscles*. Thus *AAA* makes three Syllables, form'd by so many motions, distinguish'd by short stops between each expiration; whereas one *A* of the same length is form'd but by one.

2. Semi-

2. Semi-vowels after Mutes constitute a distinct Syllable, as, *Ta-bi, Mar-til, A-cr*: but two Semi-vowels together (by reason of their easy coalescence) make but one, as, *Balm, Harm, Hurt, Hymn*.

3. Observe here, that E (being in many words utterly useless, as, *Hu-se, Goo-se*; and in others, nothing but a dumb sign of a prolonged Vowel, as, *Fame, Hate*;) is often quiescent in the middle, and end of words, and makes no Syllable; and therefore, where 'tis needless, 'tis of late much omitted; and when 'tis a dumb sign only, it may be well supply'd by a mark of quantity; as, *Fam, Hat*. But remember, in Latin no letter is quiescent; So *Fragrans, dedicate, rude, grave, &c.* are both Latin and English, as the Final E is either pronounc'd, or not.

XI. A Syllable is either pure, when one Vowel is sounded distinctly after another in the same word; As, Di-e-i: or Mixt, when blended with a preceding Consonant, as Do-mi-nus.

1. Hence observe in the spelling of words to distinguish between Vowels purely sounded, and Diphthongs. Thus *Beat, Meat* are English: but *Be-at, Me-at*, Latin. Use will show the difference in common words, in others this mark (·) call'd *Dialysu*, will prevent mistake, as, *Pa·ma, An·lai*.

2. When a Consonant stands between two Vowels, let it be sounded with the latter, as, *Am·a·ti·mus*, not *Am·at·im·us*. This is the more necessary to be observ'd by the English, because they much affect the Collision of a Vowel with the following Consonant; which as it makes the sound of our own tongue more robust and manly; so it corrupts the Latin pronunciation by a harsh division of Syllables: As, *Fem·i·na, Dum·i·nus*; for *Fe·mi·na, Du·mi·nus*.

3. A Consonant doubled is divided: As, *Din·ner, An·nus*.

4. A Mute and Liquid between two Vowels go with the latter usually, but may be divided: As, *Pa·tri·a* or *Pa·tria*; for which reason the preceding Vowel is long or short.

5. In words, where Consonants are variously mix'd, the best way is to divide the Syllables in writing, according to the pauses usually made between them in pronunciation. Other methods seem more critical, but this is more natural, as well as more instructive to beginners in showing the reason of lengthening Vowels by Position. So *Mag·is·ter, Pot·es·tas, Hof·tis*. For 'tis not merely the placing of a Vowel before two Consonants that is the cause of its length, but its Coalescence into a Syllable with the former of them; otherwise I in *mag·is·ter*, and E in *pot·es·tas* might be short, as *Mar·tial* has taken the Liberty to make the middle Syllable in *Sma·ra·g·da*.

Sard·onyx·a, Sma·ra·g·da, adam·an·tas, jas·pi·da·us.

However words compounded should be divided into their parts, as, *In·ers, Tran·sa, Es·tim*. The use of these Observations is chiefly for the more commodious dividing words by this mark (·) *Hyphen*, plac'd at the end of a line to show, that one or more Syllables (for want of room) are run'd off to the beginning of the next.

6. Whereas

6. Whereas beside the smaller Letters, *a, b, c*, &c. there are Capitals, *A, B, C*, &c. The use of these is (joynly) for Titles and Inscriptions, singly, for Proper Names abbreviated, as, *A. Aulus, D. Darius*, &c. Also Initial Letters of all Proper Names and their Derivatives, as *Roma, Romanus*, of Arts and Dignities, as *Grammatica, Episcopus*, of larger Periods, of Verses, and the English Pronoun *I*, are always Capitals.

Lastly, Observe the custom is to sound *TI* before a Vowel, as *Si* or *Shi*, and that in Latin as well as English. So *conditis*, as if *condistis*, unless *S* or *T* precede, as *Justus, Mitter*, or it begins a word, as *Titus*, or in *Vitium* from *Vita*, a Vine.

CHAP. II.

ETYMOLOGIE.

I **E**tymologie is the interpretation of words by their significations, kinds, and properties.

Grammar in System performs this only by General Definitions, Divisions, and Rules: but a particular Explication of the various Uses and Significations of words is the work of a Dictionary. *Alind est Grammaticæ, aliud Latini loqui.*

II. A word is a sign of a thought express'd by one or more Syllables in writing, or speaking.

III. All words in the Latin tongue are compris'd under these eight Names: 1. Nomen, Noun. 2. Adnomen, Pronoun. 3. Prænomen, Pronoun. 4. Verbum, Verb. 5. Participium, Participle. 6. Adverbium, Adverb. 7. Præpositio, Preposition. 8. Conjunctio, Conjunction.

In this Enumeration, the *Adjective* (under the more expressive name of *Adnomen*) constitutes a distinct class of words. The *Conjunction* is put last, because all other words must be consider'd in the construction of a sentence, before there can be any use of that. The *Interjections* are but few, and may be consider'd as *Adverbs of Passion*.

Of a Noun.

IV. A Noun is a word expressing our first conception of a thought concerning any thing. So God, *Deus*; An Angel, *Angelus*; A Man, *Homo*; The World, *Mundus*;

du; The Night, *Nox*; Sweetness, *Dulcedo*; Death, *Mors*, are names of things.

In this definition of a Noun, *THING* does not signifie always a real Being; but what is any way. (according to vulgar apprehension) an object of the sense or understanding. Thus, words importing Privation, as, *Blindness*, *Cæcitas*; *Darkness*, *Tenebræ*; *Emptiness*, *Vacuitas*: As also Negation; as, *No-body*, *Nemo*; *Nothing*, *Nihil*; are, in Grammatical acceptance, Nouns: because they do indirectly represent something to the Mind, altho they do not immediately signifie a real Being.

V. The Signs of a Noun in English are A, AN, or THE before it. As, A Book, *Liber*; An Apple, *Pomum*; The Light, *Lux*.

Sometimes another word comes between the Sign and the Noun, As, A (good) Scholar, An (honest) Man: But the Sign doth not belong to that word; as, you cannot say, A good, or An honest. Also some Nouns have not always the Sign before them; as *Death*, *Sweetness*: but they are capable of it, which other words are not. As, The death of the righteous is blessed, There is a sweetness in Sugar very pleasant.

VI. A Noun, as to its signification, is either, 1. Common; as, Homo I man generally, or any man indefinitely; Urbs I City, or any City what-ever. Or, 2. Proper; as, Carolus, The, This or That individual Person so nam'd; Londinum, The, This or That particular City so call'd.

The Use of these Articles (such as the Latin hath not) is observable in the English. Thus A (before a Consonant). An (before a Vowel) extend the signification of a Noun to any one, and so to all (one by one) of its kind: but THE restrains it to some known particular, and thereby makes a Noun Common equivalent to a Proper.

VII. The signification of a Noun is also distinguished by difference of Sex or Gender. 1. Masculine, which denotes the male-kind: As, A man, *Vir*; A Lion, *Leo*; A horse, *Equus*. 2. Feminine, the female-kind: As, A woman, *Femina*; A She-lion or Lioness, *Leona*; A Mare, *Equa*. 3. Neuter, that which hath no Sex at all: As, A stone, *Saxum*.

In English, things of the Male-sex are known by this, that HE, HIM, HIS, are spoken of them; Females, by SHE, HER, HERS; Neuters (or of no Sex) by IT: but in Latin 'tis far otherwise, where things (naturally) of no Sex are yet express'd (Grammatically) by names of any Gender. Thus Stone (an English Neuter) is in Latin, *Is lapis*, *Hæc* &c.

et, Hic sexum. Which distinction of words by Genders, however disagreeable to the Nature of things, and the rational methods of Language, yet was not merely arbitrary neither: but occasion'd by some analogy or resemblance to Sex, which the first imposers finis'd to be in the things signi'fy'd by 'em. So that the difference of Genders in Latin Nouns is chiefly observabl for the sake of Adjectives, that are to be joyn'd to them in agreeable terminations, a nicety the English Language is not vex'd with: but since use hath here made it necessary, a method is also contriv'd in this Grammar to make it much more easy.

VIII. A Noun, as to its Number, is either, 1. Singular, which speaketh but of one; As, Homo, A man; Pes, A foot; Lapis, A stone. Or, 2. Plural, which speaks of more than one; As, Homines, Men; Pedes, Feet; Lapides, Stones.

1. Most English words change the Singular into the Plural by adding *S*, as, *Hand, Hands; Stone, Stones.* 2. Some by changing a Vowel, or Diphthong; as, *Man, Men; Foot, Feet.* 3. Others by adding a Syllable; as, *Child, Children; Ox, Oxen.* But some are invariable in both numbers, as *Sheep*: Others us'd only in the Singular; as *Gold, Aurum; Silver, Argentum*; and other names of Minerals: *Milk, Lac; Ale, Cerevisia*; and the names of Liquids: *Justice, Justitia; Covetousness, Avaritia*; with other names of Vertues and Vices. Which Use and Observation in both Languages will teach the diligent Learner.

Of CASES.

IX. In each number Nouns are varied by Terminations or Cases, whereby the circumstances of their signification in conjunction with other words are express'd: As, Dominus, Domini, Domino, Dominum.

The English Tongue having no variety of Cases, supplies the use of 'em by certain Particles set before the Noun: As, *O God, the Memorial OF thy Love TO the Sons OF Men FROM the beginning OF the World TO this day is recorded WITH all thankfulness IN the hearts OF the Righteous.*

X. The Cases of a Noun are six: Nominative, Vocative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Ablative.

1. The Nominative is the first Termination of a Noun by which a thing is nam'd. It is ever set before a Verb, when a thing is affirm'd to *Be*, or to *Do*, or to have any thing *Done* unto it: As *God is; A Scholar reads; A Thief is hang'd.* This Case is known in English by answering the Question *WHO* or *WHAT* upon the Verb: As, *Who is? God; Who reads? a Scholar. Who is hang'd? a Thief.*

2. The *Vocative* is in all Nouns (few excepted) the same with the Nominative, and like that, ever set before some Verb express'd, or understood. It is used in speaking to others, either in the way of *increasing*, *permitting*, or *commanding*. The Sign (O) in English is sometimes (or may be) set before it. As, O Lord, bless us.

3. The *Genitive* ever comes after some Noun express'd or understood. It is so called from *Genus*, *Kindred* or *Family*, because 'tis us'd to express alliances of blood between Persons, but besides, it imports great variety of other relations between things, as well as Persons, which are to be considered more particularly in Syntax. This case is known in English by these forms of speaking, *The Son OF Adam*, *Filius Adami*. *The King's Palace*, *Palatium Regis*. *Supper-time*, *Hora Cena*. The Sign OF ever does (or may) come before it, as, *The Palace OF the King*, *Tha time OF Supper*.

4. The *Dative* imports that thing or person TO or FOR whom any convenience or inconvenience is meant by the Noun, Adnoun, Verb, Participle, and (sometimes) Adverb that comes before it. As, *A friend TO the Muses*, *Amicus Musis*. *Good for the Stomach*, *Utile ventriculo*. *To study* (for) *Grammar*, *Studere Grammatica*. *Talking to his elder*, *cedens majori*. In English TO or FOR usually do (or may) come before this case, though the same signs are also us'd with the Accusative and Ablative.

5. The *Accusative* denotes that thing or person, to which the Action of the Verb or Participle foregoing does immediately relate. As, *I read a Book*, *Lego librum*. *I love God*, *Dilige Deum*. In English it has no distinct sign, but yet may be easily discovered, by asking WHOM or WHAT upon the Verb or Participle going before it. As, *What do you read?* *A Book*. *Whom do you love?* *God*. It also often admits Prepositions before it, the use of which is to circumstantiate the Action of the Verb, as it relates to the Noun. As *I look TOWARD heaven*. *I swim OVER the River*.

6. The *Ablative* denotes the manner HOW, the instrument WHERE, WITH, or the reason WHY any thing IS, DOES, or hath any thing DONE unto it. This case in English hath always some Preposition before it, and so it hath in Latin too, tho' not always express'd. As, *He did the business with wonderfull speed*, *Peragis rem (CUM) mira celeritate*. *He went the journey on foot*, *Iter (CUM) pedibus conficit*. *He fainted for fear*, *(PROPTER) metu defecit*. Of these more fully in the Syntax.

XI. According to the various inflections of Oblique Cases from the Nominative, Nouns are distributed into five Declensions, distinguished by the termination of the Genitive Singular. The 1. A diphthong. 2. I.

3. IS. 4. US. 5. EI.

A General Table of the five Declensions; all at one view.

C H A P. III.

Of Declensions.

Decl.	I.	V.	II.	III.	IV.
	N. V. ā.	es.	N. V. —	N. V. —	ūs.
	G. D. æ.	ēi.	G. i.	G. is.	ūs.
Sing.	Ac. am.	em.	Ac. um.	D. i.	ui.
	Ab. ā.	ē.	D. Ab. ō.	Ac. em. im.	um.
				Ab. e. i.	ū.
Decl.	I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
	N. V. æ.	i.	N. V. Ac. es.	ūs.	es.
	G. arum.	orum.	G. um. ium.	uum.	erum.
Plur.	Ac. as.	os.	D. Ab. ibus.	ibus.	ebus.
	D. Ab. is.	is.			

For the more speedy learning and remembering the declensions observe,

1. The Nom. and Voc. singular in each declension (excepting Nouns in *us* of the *Second*) are the same, but in the plural without exception.
2. The Gen. and Dat. singular in the *First* and *Fifth*, and the Dat. and Abl. singular in the *Second* are the same, nor but four different terminations singular in those declensions.
3. The Dat. and Abl. plural end in *IS* in the first and second, nor are there more than four terminations in each.
4. In the third and fifth, the Nom. Voc. Acc. plural end all in *ES*, the fourth all in *US*.
5. In the third and fourth the Dat. and Abl. plural make *ibus*.
6. The three last declensions have usually but three plural terminations.
7. A Noun of the Neuter Gender in any declension makes the Nom. Voc. Acc. invariable in each number, but in the plural these cases always end in *A*.
8. The examples of these Declensions for more easy remembrance may be, I. *Buccina* a Trumpet. II. *Barulus* a Staff. *Bellum* War. III. *Calx* Colour. *Clavis* a Key. *Carmen* a Verse. IV. *Fructus* Fruit. V. *Facies* a Face.

THE FIRST DECLENSION.

Example, Hæc BUCCINA a Trumpet.

Singular.	{	N. V. BUCCINÆ.	}	Plural.	{	N. V. BUCCINÆ.
		G. D. BUCCINÆ.				Gen. BUCCINARUM.
		Ac. BUCCINAM.				Acc. BUCCINAS.
		Ab. BUCCINÀ.				D. Ab. BUCCINIS.

1. All Latin Nouns of this declension end in A, and are of the feminine gender.

2. Æ Diphthong is by the Poets turned into ai, as Terra-ai, of the Earth, Aula-ai of the Hall: and sometimes into ai, as, Familiâ of a Family, Viâ of a Way.

3. ARUM sometimes is contracted into am, as, Calicularum, Galliarum, of the Inhabitants of Heaven.

4. IS sometimes makes ABUS, when (to prevent mistake) some Nouns of this declension are to be distinguished from those of the Second. As, Anima, Afina, Dea, Domina, Equa, Famula, Filia, Liberta, Mula, Nata, Serva, Socia, &c. From Animus, Afinus, Deus, Dominus, Equus, Famulus, &c.

5. Greek Nouns reducible to this declension end in AS ES Masculine, or in E Feminine, and are thus declined.

N. PENE'as, G. D. PENE'm. Ac. PENE'am, V. AB. PENE'â.
N. ANCHI'Ses, V. ANCHI Sê-3, G. D. ANCHI'Se, Ac. ANCHI'Sen, Ab. ANCHISê-â.

N. V. D. AB. PENE'LOPê, G. PENE'LOPes, Ac. PENE'LOPen.

6. If any of these have the plural number (as Epistomæ) they are declined according to the common form.

THE SECOND DECLENSION.

Examples. Hic Baculus a Staff. Hoc Bellum War.

Singular.	{	N. BACULus.	}	Plural.	{	N. V. BACULi.
		V. BACULe.				G. BACULorum.
		G. BACULi.				Ac. BACULos.
		Ac. BACULum.				D. Ab. BACULis.

Sing.	{	N. V. Ac. BELLum.	}	Plur.	{	N. V. Ac. BELLa.
		G. BELLi.				G. BELLorum.
		D. Ab. BELLô.				D. Ab. BELLis.

1. The terminations of this declension, are *US, ER, IR*, all (excepting some few in *US*) Masculine, and *UM* Neuter. Where observe, that *ER, IR*, (and also *UR*) are in most words made by laying aside the old termination *US*, as, *Puerus, Virus*, now *Puer, Vir*. *Saturus*, now *Satur*.

2. When the Nominative ends in *US*, the Voc. ends in *E*. But *Agnus* a Lamb, *Chorus* a Quire, *Fluvius* a River, *Lucus* a Grove, *Populus* People, sometimes make *US* also; *Deus* God, *US* only.

3. When the Nominative ends in *IUS*, the Voc. makes *I*, in these two *Filius* a Son, *Genius* a familiar Spirit, and in all Proper Names, as, *Virgilius*. Voc. *Fili, Geni, Virgili*.

4. To this Declension are reduced *Ambo* both, *duo* two, and are thus declined.

N. V. AMBO-*ae-o*

G. AMBORUM-arum-orum.

Acc. AMBO-as-o.

D. Ab. AMBOBUS-abus-obus.

N. V. DUO-*ae-o*.

G. DUORUM-arum-orum.

Acc. DUO-as-o.

D. Ab. DUOBUS-abus-obus.

Greek Nouns, reducible to this declension, end in *EUS*. *OS*. Masc. and *ON* Neut. declined as follows,

N. ORPHEUS.

V. ORPHEU.

G. ORPHE-i-eos.

D. ORPHE-o-i.

Acc. ORPHE-um-on-s.

Ab. ORPHE-o.

N. V. ANDROGEOS.

G. ANDROGE-i-o-onis.

D. ANDROGE-o-oni.

Acc. ANDROGE-o-on-on-s.

Ab. ANDROGE-o-on-s.

1. These Greek Nouns being of several Declensions in that Language, retain various terminations in the Latin, and that among the Poets, to comply the better with the measures of Verse.

2. When they are Plural, the Genitive ends in *ae* or *um*, other cases follow the common form.

3. Nouns in *OS* make the Acc. in *ON*: and Neuters in *ON* make the Voc. and Acc. the same; and in all other cases Sing. and Plural they follow the common form.

THE THIRD DECLENSION.

Examples. COLOR Colour. CLAVIS a Key.
CARMEN a Verse.

Singular.	Hic N. V. COLOR.	A. The	N. V. A. COLORES.
	G. COLŌRis.	Of.	
	D. COLŌRi.	To. For	
	Acc. COLŌRem.	A. The	
	Ab. COLŌRē. In, with, by, &c.		
			G. COLORum.
			D. Ab. COLORibūs.

Sing.

Sing.	Hæc	N. V. CLAVis.	Plural.	N. V. Ac. CLAVes.
	G.	CLAVis.		G. CLAVium.
	D.	CLAVi.		D. Ab. CLAVibûs.
	Ac.	CLAVem-im.		
	Ab.	CLAVE-i.		
Sing.	Hoc	N. V. Ac. CARMen.	Plural.	N. V. A CARMinî.
	G.	CARMinis.		G. CARMinum.
	D.	CARMinî.		D. Ab. CARMinibûs.
	Ab.	CARMine.		

1. The terminations of this declension being numerous, it may be some ease to the Learner to range them according to their Genders, and comprise them in memorial words.

Masculine Terminations VII.

AN. IN. ON. ER. OR. OS. O. Annoneroroso, as,
ARBOR, AGON, DELPHIN, FLAT, TITAN, PUGIL, VENTOR.

Feminine Terminations V.

AS. AUS. ES. IS. Biconsonant S, as,
ÆTAS, LANS, MERCUS, IRAS, (Biconsona, as) ART, PARS.

Neuter Terminations IX.

C. A. L. E. T. AR. EN. UR. US. Calet-creturus, as,
LIMEN, ONUS, MEL, DRAMA, JECUR, LAC, RETE, CAPUT, FUR.

2. This being the only Declension, that gives the young Learner any trouble about Genders, by this obvious method is made very easy. The few exceptions to these general rules, and whatever else concerns the more exact knowledge of Genders, is purposely deferred till the Syntax is over. For in the first exercises of making Latin, (the Dictionary being necessary to be consulted for every word,) there is no need of knowing Genders by exactness of Rules, which has been hitherto an unreasonable incumbrance upon beginners and a great hindrance to their progress in the Latin Tongue.

3. The variety of Inflections from the Nominative is another difficulty in this Declension, reading of Authors will by degrees make them all familiar, in the mean time, these few observations may be some help to the Learner. 1. That many words have lost their ancient termination; as, *Læx*, *Mel*, *Animal*, &c. heretofore *Læxis*, *Mellis*, *Animale*. So *Dux*, *Rex*, *Vox*, &c. heretofore *Ducis*, *Regis*, *Vocis*. So *Arx*, *Plæb*, *Walls*, &c. formerly *Aræis*, *Plæbis*, *Trabes*. So *Sanguis*, *Turbo*, were once *Sanguem*, *Turben*. *Plato*, *Ligo*, &c. anciently *Platon*, *Ligum*. *Jecur*, *Ciner*, were *Jecur*, *Ciner*. 2. That the Genitive ending in *IS*, was either the same with the Nominative, as, *Clavis-is*, or formed by changing the last Syllable of the Noun into *IS*, as *Hæro-is*, *Nubes-is*: or by adding *IS*

to the Nom. as *Angŭr-is*, *Latŭr-is*, *Sindŭr-is*. By which it may appear, that the present diversity of inflection was anciently more regular, and contriv'd with greater analogy, than may seem to a young Latinist.

4. The Acc. should end in *EM*, but these following in *IM*; *Amass. Cŕenŭb. Charyb. Cucŭm. Censŭs. Decuss. El. Fur. Gamm. Lencalp. Mŕpŕs. Op. Palŭ. Prasŕp. Secŭr. Sinŭp. Sis. Syrr. Tass. Viss.* and Names of Rivers; as, *Thŕ. Thamsŭs. IM* or *IN*.

Some have both *EM*, and *IM*; as, *Bipon. Canŭl. Crat. Cut. Lent. Mess. Ov. Rat. Semus. Sent. Strigil. So. Aquŭl. Clav. Febr. Rev.* yet more often *EM*. Also, *Pupp. Raf. Thŕ.* yet more often *IM*.

5. The Ablative in *E* regularly; but Neuters in *AL. AR. E.* except *fer, hŕar, julŕ, nellar, sal.* Adjectives in *IS, ER*, whose neuters end in *E*; Substantives put adjectively, as, *affinis, amŕlis*; names of Months, as, *Aprilŭ*; Nouns not increasing, which make the Acc. in *IM* (except *ves-te*) do all make their Abl. in *I*.

Some, as Adjectives of one termination, and the compounds of *Par*, (but *divŕ, hospŕ, pauper, pulch-is, supŕ, ŕenŕ*; compounds of *par*, participles put absolute, *E* only; *memŕ, par, onely I.*) all comparatives, Verbals in *TRIX*, Accusatives in *EM* and *IM*, do make the Abl. in *E* and *I*. Also *affinitas, amnis, anguis, avis, civis, classis, callis, fluis, furŕ, fustis, ignis, imber, lŕbes, lapis, mal, molŕs, mons, mugil, navis, occiput, orbis, ovŕ, pars, passis, rus, segŕ, ŕurŕ, ŕurs, stercus, supellex, velŕs*; but more often *E*.

6. Neuters, whose Abl. ends in *E* and *I*, or *I* only, do make their Nominative plural in *IA*. (except *ubŕa, vetera*, and all comparatives, tho' *pluŕ* hath both *plura*, and *pluria*.) The rest having their Abl. in *E*, make their Nom. plur. in *A* only.

7. The Gen. plur. in *UM*: But these have *FUM*. 1. Ablatives in *E* and *I*, or *I* only. (Except comparatives, and these following; *hi-ri-ŕipŕ, celer, cum-im-pŕ, cum-de-gŕner, divŕs, ubŕ, pulchŕ, impŕchŕ, supŕ, memŕ, mugilis, pugil, segŕ, strigilis, vŕtus, vigil*; with adjectives in *EX*, as, *supplex*. Words in *FEX, CEPS*, from *facio, capis*; as, *artifex, participŕ, UM*.) 2. Monosyllables biconsonant, as *Trabŭ, noc*; and these following; as, *mas, vas-dis, cas, das, as, dis, tis, glis, vis, cer, lar, mas*; Polyŕyllables in *NS, RS*, as *Infans, colorŭ*. 3. Nouns in *ES, ER, IS*, not increasing (except, *canis, panis, juvŕnis, vates, vulŕerŭ, UM*, but *apŕ-UM-FUM*.) 4. The parts of *As* (the Roman pound) as, *Quincunx, Sextans, Bes, Sec.* and Polyŕyllables in *AS*, as, *colamŕtas*, which often make *FUM*. 5. Nouns wanting the Singular number; as, *Pendŕtes, munia*, (except *celŕtes, lamŕtas, opŕ, primŕtes, prŕŕtes, UM*.)

The names of Feasts (being plural only) make the Gen. in *ORUM* and *FUM*; as, *Bacchanalia, Idŕtes* and *Calŕtas* make *FUM*; *Bes, lunŕ* by contraction, which is also common to many words in this declension to be observ'd in reading.

Neuters in *A*, as, *Prŕma*, make their Dat. plur. in *IS* and *IBUS*. *Bei* hath *bŕtes, bŕbus*.

Greek Nouns of this Declension.

These remain in several cases the Greek manner of inflection, in which this Table will be some direction to beginners, the rest may be learn'd by observation.

Sing.								Plur.	
N.	Titān	Pallas	Paris	Pocis	Chreines	Crater	Dido	Es.	
V.	Titan	Pallas	Parī	Pocis	es. e.	Crater	Dido	Es.	
G.	os.	os. is.	os. is.	cos. ios. is.	is. l.	os. is.	is.	um. on.	
D.	ī.	l.	l.	l.	l.	l.	o.	ibus.	
Ac.	a.	a. em.	a. in.	in. im.	em.	a. em.	o.	at. es.	
Ab.	e.	e.	e.	l.	e.	e.	o.	ibus.	

THE FOURTH DECLENSION.

Examples. Hic Fructus Fruit. Hoc Veru a Spit.

Singular.	{	N. V. FRUCT ^{us} .	}	Plural.	{	N. V. A. FRUCT ^{us} .
		G. FRUCT ^{us} .				G. FRUCT ^{uum} .
		D. FRUCT ^{ui} .				
		Ac. FRUCT ^{um} .				
		Ab. FRUCT ^u .				D. Ab. FRUCT ^{ib^{us}} .
Sing.	{	N. V.	}	Plur.	{	N. V. Ac. VER ^u .
		G. D.				G. VER ^{uum} .
		Ac. Ab.				D. Ab. VER ^{ub^{us}} .

1. Terminations in this Declension are US Masculine, (few excepted,) and U Neuter. Those in U are in the singular invariable: But JESUS makes Acc. JESUM, in all other cases JESU.

2. The Gen. Sing. ends sometimes in UIS, as Fructus, which was the old termination, (but afterwards contracted into us. Sometimes 'tis found in I, as, nihil aruati, nihil sumuati, because these words were formerly of the second Declension.

3. The Dat. is also sometimes in ū for ui, as, Parce metu, Cytherea. Virg. This whole Declension being indeed but a Limb of the Third, and formed thence by contraction, as, Fructus, G. Fructus, D. Fructui, Ac. Fructum, Ab. Fructu. N. Plur. Fructus, &c.

4. The Gen. Plural is also contracted farther, as, Passuum, passuum. Quæ gratia curruum, for curruum. Virgil.

5. The Dat. and Abl. Plural end regularly in IBUS: But these, Arus, arcus, arui, feni, lacus, parui, portus, poci, quercus, fœcus, tribus, veru, make UBUS; Yet Aruius, paruius, verius, are also read; and genus, quæsius, make both.

6. A great part of the Nouns of this Declension are Verbals, and from hence are the Supines in *UM* and *U* borrowed.

THE FIFTH DECLENSION.

Example. *Hæc Facies a Face.*

Sing.	{	N. V. FACIēs.	}	{	N. V. Acc. FACIēs.
		G. D. FACIēL.			G. FACIērum.
		Acc. FACIēnti.			D. Ab. FACIēbūs.
		Ab. FACIē.			

1. The only termination of this Declension is *ES*, the nouns Feminine all, but *Moridies* Masculine, and *Dies* Masc. or Fem. in the Sing. and only Masculine in the plural.

2. The Gen. regularly ends in *EI*, but yet some make *II*, as, *Dii, pernicii*. So *Virg. Munera lustrant; dii*. And *Cic. Nihil pernecii causā*. Also *Fidi* for *Fidei*. Others make *ES*, as, *Equites daturus illius dies pamas*, *Cic.* And sometimes *E*, as, *Libra dis feminaq; parat ubi fuerat horas*, *Virg.*

3. The Dat. also sometimes makes *E*, as, *Prodideris commissa fide*. Horatius is, *Fidei commissa*. And anciently was the same with the Ablative.

4. Only *Dies* and *Res* are commonly used in all the plural cases, the rest have only the N. V. A. unless these perhaps are read in other cases, *Species, facies, acies, (fors,) progenies*.

CHAP. IV.

Of an Adnoun or Adjective.

1. In Adjective (or Adnoun) is a word joyned to a Noun to shew what manner of thing the Noun is; as, A (GOOD) Boy, A (NEW) Book, A (SWEET) Apple.

An Adnoun or Adjective is so called, because it is always added to a Noun, and signifies the manner of its being, in respect to some quality, number, shape, motion, relation, posture, habit, &c. As, a *nice* man, a *cunning* fox, the *third* heaven, a *crooked* crab-tree, a *swift* horse, a *golden* candlestick, &c. Therefore an Adjective makes no perfect sense of it self, and when it stands alone, (which is commonly call'd the putting of it Substantively,) there is ever some Noun understood to support it. As, *To hit the WHITE (mark.) To bend on a GREEN (twist.) Refuse the EVIL (thing.) and chase the GOOD (thing.)* You may know it in English by this, that *THING* may always follow it; as also by its place, which is commonly just before the Substantive-noun, to which it belongs, unless a Verb comes between: As, *Just are thou, O God, and righteous are thy Judgments*; or, *God is just, and his Judgments are righteous.*

II. **Adjectives** (in imitation of **Nouns-substantive**) are varied by terminations expressing their Gender, Case and Number.

In English, any Adjective suits any substantive without regard to Gender or Number; As, a **GOOD** man, a **GOOD** woman, **GOOD** books; but in Latin, every Noun (according to it's Gender, Case and Number) requires an Adnoun of an agreeable termination; as, *Vir bonus, bona femina, boni liberi*.

III. There are three ways of declining **Adnouns**, distinguished by the number of terminations in the **Nominative Case**, which are Three, Two, and One.

Adnouns of three Terminations are declined according to the form of the first and second Declension of Nouns, in this manner.

Example. Bonus, bona, bonum; Good.

Masc. Fem. Neut.			M. F. N.		
Sing.	N.	BONus-a-um.	Plur.	N.V.	BONi-a-a.
	V.	BONe-a-um.		G.	BONorum-arum- [orum.]
	G.	BONi-a-i.		Acc.	BONos-as-a.
	D.	BONo-o-o.		D.Ab.	BONis-is-is.
	Ac.	BONum-am-um.			
	Ab.	BONo-o-o.			

1. All Adjectives in **US** (but *Vetus*, G. *veteris*, old) are thus declined. Many in **ER**; as, *Sacer, sacra, sacrum*, Holy: And one in **UR**; as, *Satur-a-grum*, Well-fed; which Terminations also were anciently made (in most words) by cutting off **US**; as, *Saturus, Sator, Miserus, Miser*.

2. Some words anciently of this form, do now make their Gen. in **is**, and Dat. in **i**. As, *Salus-a-am*. G. *Salus*. D. *Sali*, alone. So *Tres*, Whole; *Unus*, One. To which, add *Alius, alia, aliud*, (for *Alium*) Another; G. *Alius*, D. *Alii*. *Alter*, Another, G. *Alterus*, D. *Alteri*. *Ullus*, Any; *Uter*, Either; *Neuter*, Neither. But these five have no Vocative.

ADNOUNS of two terminations are declined according to the form of the third Declension of Nouns, in manner following.

§

Example.

Examples. Tristis, triste, *Sad.* Levior, levius *more light.*

M. F. N.			M. F. N.		
Singular.	N. V.	TRISTis-e.	Plural.	N. V. Ac.	TRISTes-ia
	G.	TRISTis.		G.	TRISTium.
	Acc.	TRISTem-e.		D. Ab.	TRISTibus
	D. Ab.	TRISTi.			

M. F. N.			M. F. N.		
Singular.	N. V.	LEVior-us	Plural.	N. V. Acc.	LEVior-es-a
	G.	LEVioris.		G.	LEViorum.
	D.	LEViori.		D. Ab.	LEVioribus
	Acc.	LEViorem-us.			
	Ab.	LEViore-ori.			

1. All Adjectives in *IS* are declined like *Tristis*, except *Tricuspi*, and *Poetical Epithets* deriv'd from proper Names, which have but one Gender and Termination, and retain a Greek inflection. As, *Erymanthia* (*Idis*, for *Erymanthia*) *ursa*, Ovid. *Manalis* (*Manalis*) *ova*, Virg. *Parrhasia* for *Parrhasia*, Ovid.

2. All Adnouns in *OR* being comparatives are declined, as, *Levior*, making a double Termination in the Abl. Sing.

3. In every case having two Terminations, the first is Masc. and Fem. the second Neut. Where but one, 'tis of all Genders, as is also each Termination in the Abl. Sing.

ADNOUNS of One Termination are Declin'd as Nouns of the third Declension, in form following.

Example. Felix (or Fœlix) *Happy.*

Sing.	N. V.	FELIx.	Plural.	N. V. Acc.	FELices-ia.
	G.	FELicis.		G.	FELicium.
	D.	FELici.		D. Ab.	FELicibus
	Ac.	FELicem-x.			
	Ab.	FELice-i.			

Of Adjectives compared.

1. So are declined Adjectives in *AS*. *ES*. *AR*. *OR*. *OS*. and *S* impure. As, *ArpinAS*, *DivES*, *Trux*, *Prædēs*, *pater*, *MemOR*, *lucos*.

By *S* impure is meant, when 'tis blended with some Consonant, as, *Solus*, *Prudens*, *Andax*. 'Tis more properly called *S* biconsonant, because the terms of *Pure* and *Impure* belong to Vowels, as they are founded with, or without consonants going before them.

2. Some Adjectives in *ER*, (as, *Pauper*, *paler*, *degener*, *alior*) belong to this place, tho' they differ from *Felix* in the Abl. Sing. and Gen. Plur. For which, See Note 4. 6. on the third declension of Nouns. Also *avis*, *alacris*, *color*, *calaber*, &c. have something peculiar in the terminations of the Nominative, which (as they occur in Reading) may be sufficiently known by the Dictionary.

IV. *Adjectives* of two or three Terminations in the Nominative; as, *LeviOR* and *LeviUS*; *LeviSSIMUS*-um; do (besides their principal Signification) denote excess or defect between things compared with one another; and are therefore call'd Adjectives of Comparison.

V. In Comparison there are three degrees, by which things are compared according to Equality, Excess, or Defect. The first is Positive; as, *Hard*, *Durus*. *Bold*, *Andax*. The second Comparative; as, *Harder*, *Durior*, or *MORE Hard*, *MAGIS Durus*. The third, Superlative; as, *Hardest*, *Durissimus*, or *MOST Hard*, *MAXIME* (valde, admodum,) *Durus*.

1. The English suitably to the Latin hath three degrees of Comparison, distinguished also by Signs and Terminations. The Positive is the Adjective it self without any change or Sign, as, *Hard*, and supposes an equality of hardness in the things of which 'tis spoken, at least, implies no inequality. The Comparative adds *ER* to the Positive, or puts *MORE* before it, as *Harder*, *more Hard*. The Superlative adds *EST*, or prefixes *MOST* to the Positive, as, *Hardest*, *most* (very, exceeding) *Hard*. Defect is expressed by *LESS* (minus) or *LEAST* (minimus) set before the Positive, as, *Less hard*, *least hard*, or else by the contrary Positive, as, *Softer*, *softest*.

2. Also there be Adjectives of a peculiar Termination both in English and Latin, which (altho' not of a Comparative form) do extend, or diminish the Signification. Such as, *Stupid*, *Silly*, *Wise*, *Lapid-Erisivus*, *OSUS*. *Desire-gain-FULL*, *Dol-Luc-OSUS*. *Danger-treachery-OSUS*, *Pericul-Perfid-OSUS*. *Very bitter*, *draconis*, *Amaru-Somno-LEN-TUS*. *GameSOME*, *ferrousFULL*, *Ludi-Gemo-BUNDUS*, *reddy*, *Rubundus*, &c. which are *Augmentatives*. But these following are *Diminutives*, and imply some defect, as, *Hard-redd-sweet-ISH*, *Duriss-rubund-dulcis-ULUS*, also *SUB-tervus-tristis*, *Tallum-sad-ISH*. The observation of which will direct the Learner to a propriety of speaking in both Languages.

VI. To the first case of the Positive in I, add OR for the Comparative, and SSIMUS for the Superlative; as, G. Duri-OR-SSIMUS. D. Tristi-OR-SSIMUS. &c. except,

1. The Positive in ER takes to it RIMUS; as, Pulcher, fair, PulcherRIMUS, fairest.

2. The Positive in ILIS makes ILLIMUS in the three; Humilis, humble; Facilis, easy; Similis, like; So sometimes, Imbecillis, feeble; Gracilis, slender; Gracillimus, most slender.

3. Derivatives from dico, loquor, volo, change US (for ENS) into ENTIOR, ENTISSIMUS. As, Maledicus, ill-spoken; Magniloquus, high-talking; Benevolus, kind-hearted. But Veradicus, tell-troth, is only Positive, and mirificus, wonderfull, makes mirificissimus.

4. Adjectives in US pure (that is, following a Noun) use only the Signs; as, Pius, pious; Magis pious, more pious; Maximè pious, most pious.

Many English Adjectives also use only the Signs more and most; the reason in both Languages is to avoid an ill sound, which would ensue upon the change of Terminations. Such are, Angry, constant, common, prudent, amiable, steadfast, childish, famous, dogged, passionate, troublesome; together with others of like termination, which will be obvious to a discerning Ear, and ought to be observed by such, as aim at neatness of Language.

VII. Adjectives irregularly compared, but of frequent use, are these.

Bonus. Melior. Optimus.	Malus. Pejor. Pessimus.
Good. Better. Best.	Bad. Worse. Worst.
Magnus. Major. Maximus.	Parvus. Minor. Minimus.
Great. Greater. Greatest.	Little. Less. Least.
Multus. Plus. N. Plurimus.	Pris. obs. Prior. Primus.
Much. many. More. Most.	Before. Former. Foremost. First.

1. Besides these, there are Adjectives defective in their degrees, some wanting the Positive; as, Deterior, worse, penior. Or form'd from Positives dissu'd. As, Ceterior, ceterius, from Ceter. Interior, intus, from Interius. Inferior, infimus, or imus, from Inferius. Exterior, extrinsecus and extrinsecus, from Exterius. Superior, supremus or summus, from Suparius. Posterior, Postremus, from Posterus. Ulterior, ultimus, from ulter, &c.

2. Others

2. Others want the comparative only. As, *Apricus, Bellus, Confusus, Diverfus, Falsus, Fidus, Inclutus, Invidus, Invisus, Iustus, Meritum, Novus, Nuptus, Persuafus, Sacer, &c.*

3. Others have no Superlative. As, *Communis, Declivus, Dexter, Infusus, Ingens, Juvénis, Longinquus, Optimus, Proximus, Salutaris, Sator, Senex, Supinus, Taciturnus, &c.*

4. Some are comparatives only. As, *Anterior, Habitor, Licentior, Senior, Sequior*: And those form'd from Substantives, as, *Cinadior, Nivunior, Pannior*. About which consult the Dictionary.

5. Many admit of no comparison at all either by Signs or Terminations, and these the Nature of their Signification will discover to the Learner, as his judgment in things begins to ripen.

CHAP. V.

Of Derivation and Composition.

I A Noun being the first of its kind is called Primitive, and all words coming from it are Derivatives. As from *LINGO* To lick are derived, *Lingua* a Tongue, *Linguarium* a Gag, *Linguax* a Babler, *Linguatus* skill'd in Language, *Linguaculus* a little given to prate, *Linguosus* very talkative, *Linctus* a Licking, *Lingula* a Languet, *Ligula* a Spoon, *Lingulatus* tounded, *Lingulaca* Adders-tounge.

To observe such Derivations of Words is recommended to the diligent Learner, as a *compendious Expedient* for attaining the Latin (but especially the Greek) Tongue: the *Similitude* of Sounds, and *Analogy* of Formation from the *Primitives* being such helps to memory, as will cut off one half of the Labour.

II. Derivatives are reducible to these five sorts following.

1. *Patronymics*; which are Names derived from Parents or near Kindred. As, *Pelides*, the Son of *Peleus*; *Phaëtonis* or *Phaëtonias* the Sister of *Phaëton*.

These Names are of a Greek form, and may be known by these terminations *DES, ION*, Masculine. *AS, IS, NE*, Feminine.

2. *Gentiles*, signify the Country, Family, and sometimes Party also to which any one belongs. As, *Anglus* an Englishman, from *Anglia*; *Gens Octavia* a Family in *Rome*; *Factio Presbyteriana* a Sect in *Scotland*.

3. *Posses-*

3. Possessives, denote what concerns Right or Possession; as from *Rex*, *Jus Regium*, the King's Prerogative, from *Pater*, *potestas patria*, the Authority of a Father; from *Uxor*, *res uxoria*, Pin-money.

4. Diminutives, lessen the Signification of the Primitive, and end in *ULUS*, *ULA*, *ELLUS*, *ULUM*, *ASTER*. As, *LIB-er-ellus*, *PU-er-ulus*, *PU-ell-a-ula*, *RET-ic-ulum*; A little Boy, Girl, Net; *GRAMMA-TIC-us*, *PHILOSOPH-us*, after, a Pedant in Grammar or Philosophy.

5. Denominatives, are all other Appellations of things taken from Matter, Magnitude, Number, Figure, Colour, Action, Passion, Time, Place, &c.

III. Nouns are compounded these eight ways:

1. With Nouns; as, *Pater-familiâs*, a House-holder.
2. Pronouns; as, *Aliquis*, Somebody.
3. Verbs; as, *Agri-côla*, a Husband-man.
4. Adverbs; as, *Bene-fici-um*, a Good-turn.
5. Prepositions; as, *Inter-nunci-um*, a Goer between.
6. Numerals; as, *Bi-enni-um*, *bi-duum*, *bi-mestris*, two-years-days-months-space.
7. Syllabic Adjections; as, *Tu-te*, thy-self; *I-dem*, self-same.
8. Some are De-com-pounded; as, *Im-providus*, Unbeedfull.

If two Nominatives unchanged compound a word, they both are varied in the oblique cases; as, *Jus-jurandum*, *Juris-jurandi*, *Res-publica*, *rei-publica*. Except, *Alter-iter*, *leo-pardus*, *duo-atrum*, and Numerals compounded with *Duo*, as, *duo-decimus* the 12th. *duo-de-vigesimus* the twentieth.

If a Nominative and an oblique compound a word, the oblique remains unvaried; as, *Juris-consultus*, *Juris-consulti*,

C H A P. VI.

Of a Pronoun.

I **A** Pronoun is a word set either before a Noun to show it, or put in its place to supply the want of it.

II. Pronouns that show the Noun, are called Demonstratives; as, Ego I, Tu Thou, Hic He, Ille He, Ille he, Is he, Ipse I, thou, he, my-thy-him-self, and it self.

III. Pronouns, that supply the place of a Noun mentioned before, are called Relatives; as, Qui who, which; Sui him-her-self, themselves: And also, Ille, Ille, Ipse, Is, and Hic (being alone in a Sentence) are Relatives to some Noun afore-going.

IV. Pronouns, that denote what belongs to another, are called Possessives; as, Meus mine, Tuus thine, Suus his, Noster our, Vester your, Nostras of our Country, Family or Party, Vestras of yours.

V. Pronouns used in asking Questions, are called Interrogatives; as, Quis who? Cujus-a-um whose? Cujas of what Country, Family or Party? Uter whether of the two?

1. The Pronouns used to be reckoned by tale, but variously, 8, 14, 15, 19, 37, more or less, but 'tis a question not worth a Quarrel: such as may be accounted of the number (beyond the common account) shall be considered in the Declensions.

2. There be four Pronouns expressing HE, but with some difference in the Application. *Hic* is the nearest to the Speaker, *Ille* the next after, *Ille* the farthest off, but within view; answering to the *English Demonstratives*, This, That, and T'other: But *Is* denotes a Person absent. Also *Hic* and *Ille* used in Comparisons are so applied, that *Hic* in the sequel of the Discourse relates to the Person or thing first mentioned, and *Ille* to the Second. Tho' when ambiguity may be otherwise avoided, as by Difference of Gender or Number, this criticism is not nicely observed. There is also another difference between *Ille* and *Ipse*, that the former is used as a *Demonstrative* of Respect and Honour, the latter of Scorn and Contempt. As, *Carolus Ille Martyr*, CHARLES HE the MARTYR, *Famosus ille Tyrannus CR.* That notorious Usurper.

3. *Sui* (him-her-self or themselves) and *Suus* (his-her-their-own) have a different use from *Ille*, when relatively applied. For *Sui* and
Suus

Sui relate to the Nominative of the Sentence, but *Ille* to some other person or thing. As, *Cæsar Ariovistus dixit, non sese Gallis, sed Gallis sibi bellum intulisse.* Cæsar told Ariovistus, that the Gauls made war upon himself, not he upon the Gauls: Where *Illum illi* (for *sese, sibi*) had either referr'd to Ariovistus, or left it uncertain, who had been meant. This precise relation of *Sui* and *Suis* to the Nominat, hath given them the Name of *Reciprocal Pronouns*. Tho' here also, when no ambiguity may ensue, any other Relative may be used for the *Reciprocal*. As, *Omnes hui, quantum in ipsis* (for *se*) *sunt, Cæsarem interfecerunt.*

C H A P. VII.

Of the Four Declensions of Pronouns.

THE FIRST DECLENSION

Contains these three, EGO, TUI, SUI, thus Declined.

Sing.	N.	EGO.	I.	Plur.	N.	NOS.	We.	Us.
	G.	MEI.	} Me.		G.	NOSTR-um-i.	} Us.	
	D.	MIHI.			Ac.	NOS.		
	Ac.Ab.	ME.			D.Ab.	NOBIS.		

Sing.	N. V.	TU.	Thou.	} Thee.	Plural.	N. V. VOS.	Ye, You.	} You.
	G.	TUI.				G. VESTR-um-i.		
	D.	TIBI.				Ac. VOS.		
	Ac. Ab. TE.		D.Ab. VOBIS.					

Sing.	G.	SUI.	} Himself, herself, it self, themselves.
	D.	SIBI.	
Plur.	Ac.Ab.	SE.	

1. These three Pronouns are of any Gender, and resemble Nouns in being put substantively for persons or things.

2. When they are compounded with the Syllabic adjectives, MET, TE, they are called *reduplicative*, and signify emphatically. As, *Egomet*, I my self, *Nosmet*, We our selves, *Tuete*, *Tuemet*, Thou thy self. Also they are compounded sometimes with *Ipsa* in any case, as, *Mihi-ipsi placeo*, I please my self; *Tripsum laudas*, You commend your self; *Sibi-ipsa nocuit*, he hath hurt himself, but more elegant Writers in such Phrases

Phrases put *Ipse* rather in the Nominative, whatever Case the other Pronoun be, As, *Mihi ipse placeo. Sibi ipse nocuit, &c.*

1. How the English Pronouns vary in the Oblique Cases from the Nominative may be seen in the Scheme above, onely observe that *Thou* Plural is, in civil speaking, us'd for the Singular, *Thou* and *Thee*.

The Second Declension of Pronouns

Contains these, *Ille, Ipse, Iste, Hic, Is, Qui* and *Quis*, which are thus declin'd.

Singular.	{	N.V. ILLE-a-ud.	{	Plural.	{	N.V. ILLi-x-a. [rum.
		G. ILLus.				G. ILLorum-arum-o-
		D. ILLi.				Acc. ILLos-as-a.
		Ac. ILLum-am-ud.				D.Ab. ILLis.
		Ab. ILLo-a-o.				

So decline *ISTE* and *Alius* Another.

1. *Alius* Other, is by some esteem'd a Pronoun, it makes Gen. *Alius* (by contraction) for *Alium*, Dat. *Alii*. So *Alter* Another, G. *Alterius*, D. *Alteri*.

2. *Ille* and *Ips* are English'd alike, in this manner. The Nom. Sing. *Ille* he, *Illa* she, *Illud* it, when taken relatively, but when demonstratively, they are all express'd by *THAT*, as, *ille vir, illa femina, illud saxum*, *THAT* man, woman, stone. In the oblique cases they are render'd by *HIM, HER, IT*, relatively, and by *THAT* demonstratively. In the plural Nominative *THEY*, and in the Obliques *THEM*, relatively, and in all cases *THOSE* demonstratively. As, *THOSE* good days are gone, we shall see *THEM* no more, *THEY* are not to be recall'd.

Singular.	{	N.V. Is, Ea, Id.	{	Plural.	{	N. Ii, Ea, Ea.
		G. Ejus.				G. E-orum-arum-orum.
		D. Ei.				Acc. Eos, Eas, Ea.
		Acc. Eum, Eam, Id.				D.Ab. Iis, or Eis.
		Ab. Eo, Ea, Eo.				

English'd as *Ille* and *Iste*.

IS compounded with *dem*, is declined, *Idem, eIdem, idem*, Acc. *Eundem*, &c.

Sing.	{	N. Hic, Hæc, Hoc.	{	Plural.	{	N. Hi, Hæ, Hæc.
		G. Hujus.				G. Horum-arum-orum.
		D. Huic.				Ac. Hos, Has, Hæc.
		Ac. Hunc, Hanc, Hoc.				D.Ab. His.
		Ab. Hoc, Hæc, Hoc.				

When *Hic* is a Demonstrative, 'tis Englished *This* in the Singular, and *These* in the Plural, when a Relative (as sometimes it is) 'tis Englished as *His*, as, *Mars videt hunc, Mars seey her.*

Sing.	{	N. V. Qui, Quæ, Quod.	}	Plur.	{	N. Qui, Quæ, Quæ.
		G. Cujus.				G. Quorum-arum- [orum.
		D. Cui.				Ac. Quos, quæ, quæ.
		Acc. Quem, Quam, Quod.				D. Ab. Quibus or [Quis.
		Ab. Quo, Quâ, Quo or Qui.				

1. *Qui* standing alone as a personal Relative is Englished *WHO* in the Nominatives, and *WHOM* in the Obliques, of both numbers, but 'tis Englished *WHICH* when it relates to a thing, or hath any Noun after it expressing either thing or person. As, *He is truly wise, WHO knows himself; and WHOM no curiosity doth amuse with things impertinent. The Accidents WHICH may befall them, on WHOM no morrow's Sun shall shine, there is no humane wit, WHICH can fore-see.*

The Compounds of QUI.

Quidam, Quæ-Quod- or Quiddam. Some, certain person or thing.

Quivis, Quæ-Quod- or Quidvis. Any, Who, Which, Quilibet, Quæ-Quod- or Quidlibet. or What you please. Qui-Quæ-Quod-cunque. Who-which-what-soever. Any,

Of QUIS Interrogative.

N. *Quis, Quæ, Quid.* Acc. *Quem, Quam, Quid.* In all other cases as the Relative *Qui*. 'Tis used in asking Questions; but yet sometimes signifies (Indefinitely) *ANY*.

Compounds of QUIS.

Quisnam, Quæ-Quod- or Quidnam? Who or which or what?

Ecquis, Ecqua, Ecquod or Ecquid? The Same.

Nunquid, Nunquæ, Nunquid? Is there any?

Siquis, Siqua, Siquod or Siquid? Is (or if) there (be) any?

These four are used as Interrogatives and declined like *Quis*; onely *Ecquis* and *Siquis* make *qua for quæ* in Rom. Sing. and Acut. Plural. These which follow are Indefinites.

Quisque,

Quisque, Quæque, Quodque or Quidque. Every, Ill.
 Quisquis, ——— Quicquid. Who or whatsoever. Ac.
 Quicquid. Ab. Quoquo, Quaquà, Quoquo.
 Quisquam, Quæquam, Quod- or Quidquam. Any.
 Quispiam, Quæpiam, Quod- or Quidpiam. Any.
 Aliquis, Aliqua, Aliquod or Aliquid. Some, Any.
 Unusquisq;, Unaquæq;, Unumquodq;, Every.

THE THIRD DECLENSION.

These six, *Meus mine, Tuus thine, Suus his-her-
 their-own, Noster our, Vester your, Cujus whose*, are
 of this declension, and are declined like *Bonus*; onely
Meus makes *Mi* for *Meë* in the Vocative.

THE FOURTH DECLENSION.

Example. Nostras like *Felix*, in manner following.

s. g.	{	N.V. NOSTRAS-ate.	s. g.	{	N.V.Ac. NOSTRATES
		G. NOSTRĀtis.			[& tia.
		D. NOSTRĀri.			G. NOSTRĀtium.
		Ac. NOSTRĀtem-ate.			D.Ab. NOSTRĀtibua.
		Ab. NOSTRĀ-tear-ti.			

So are declined *Vestras, Cujas*, and all Words in *AS*, derived from Ci-
 ties, signifying an Inhabitant of the same, or somewhat belonging there-
 unto. As, *Revermas, Londinas*, A Citizen in these Places. So, *Iter Ar-
 pinas*, the road to *Arpinum*. *Bellum Capinas*, a War with those of *Cap-
 na*. Words of this form have but one Termination in the Nominative,
 and accordingly a double Termination in the Ablative.

The Vocative in all the foregoing Declensions is assigned to any Pro-
 noun but *EGO*, because they are, and may be so used, when the sense
 requires; As,

Esto nunc sul testis, & hæc mihi terra precanti. Virg.

O rex illa, quæ pœnæ æternas hanc Urbis tenebras attulisti. Cic.

Of the three Persons signified by a PRONOUN.

I. The first Person is used when we speak of our-
 selves. As, *Ego I, Nos We.*

II. The second, when we talk to others. As, *Tu
 Thou, Vos Ye or You.*

III. The third Person is that concerning which we
 speak. As, *Ille He, Illi They.*

1. In *Latin*, these Pronouns are seldom express'd, unless some *Emphasis* require it; because every *Verb* implies a *Person* in its very Termination; but the English Tongue (being not so distinct in the personal Terminations of *Verbs*) never omits the *Pronouns* in the absence of a *Noun*.

2. Also observe, that *Nouns*, *Adjectives* and *Participles* (being of themselves indifferent to any person,) are determined by the *Pronoun*, that is (or may be) joyn'd unto them. As, *Ego pauper laboro*; *Tu dives ludis*; *Pater meus vir amat nos queramus*.

C H A P. VIII.

Of a Verb.

I. A Verb is a word joyned to a *Noun* to express its Being, Doing, or Suffering; together with several circumstances of *Person*, *Number*, *Time* and *Place* thereunto relating.

A Verb is a compendious expression of many thoughts in one word. So by its *Shape* or *Figure* it signifies either the existence of a thing, or else some Action or Passion superadded to its being. 1. By *Persons* it shows, who was concern'd therein. 2. By its *Numbers*, whether one or more. 3. By *Tenses* it implies the time when. 4. By *Moods*, it either positively affirms the absolute certainty of some action, or else intimates some intension, or resolution, liberty, or necessity; power, or duty concern'd in the doing thereof.

II. A Verb according to its principal Signification is, 1. Substantive, which signifies onely the mere being of a thing. as, *Deus est*; *fuit*, *erit*; *God is*, *was*, *shall be*. 2. Adjective, which (besides mere being) implies somewhat either done by, or to the thing that is in being. As, *Deus regnat*, *God reigns*; *Deus laudatur*, *God is praised*.

A Verb Adjective is so called, because to the principal Signification of *being* (which is implied in every Verb) it adds some secondary Notion of Action and Passion; and accordingly may be resolved into a Verb Substantive and an Adjective. So *Deus regnat* into *Deus est regnans*, *God is reigning*; *Deus laudatur*, or *est laudatus*; *God is praised*.

III. A Verb Adjective is of three sorts; Active, Passive, Neuter.

IV. 3

IV. **3 Verb Active** signifies such an Action, as passes upon something as its effect; or relates to it as an object. As, *Deus videt, novit, & moderatur omnia*; God sees, knows, and orders all things.

This Verb commonly ends in O, and is capable of being made a Passive by taking R: but there are many Active Verbs in OR only which are called *Deponents*, because they have laid aside both their active Form, and passive Signification. This kind of Verb is also call'd *Transitive* because it passes its Signification upon something, that is the effect or object of its action. As, *Loquer verbum*, I speak a word; *Lego librum* I read a Book.

V. **3 Verb Passive** shows how any thing is affected by an action done by some other. As, *Lignum uritur ab igne*, Wood is burnt by fire.

This Verb ends in OR, and is made an active again by putting away R. As, *Amor* I am loved; *Amo* I do love; but observe there are several Passives in OR, which have no Actives in O now in use, and yet have an Active Signification together with the Passive. For which reason they are called *Verbs Common*. Such as, *Tueor, Vergete*, I defend, fear thee: *Tueor, Vereor à te*, I am defended, dreaded by thee.

VI. **3 Verb Neuter**, whether its Signification be Active or Passive, is always Intransitive. As, *Gaudeo, labor*, I rejoyce or am glad: *Cado, labor*, I fall.

To distinguish a *Neuter* from other Verbs, the young Learner should warily consult his Dictionary, till by more reading, and riper Judgment, he may discern the use, and observe the manner of their Signification. For the present it may suffice to note, that these Verbs for the most part approach nearest the nature of Passives, and may be varied often by them, (as, *Arbor crescit, augeatur*, the Tree grows, or is grown,) and (like them) reflect their Signification wholly upon the Nominative without any relation to an Accusative of the effect or object; and therefore are by a more expressive term call'd *Absolute* or *Intransitive*, tho' many of them are us'd also transitively, as, *Remisit peccentia*, the Plague abated; *Remisit delictum*, he abated or forgave the Debt. Which variation is also frequent in English; as, *The Wine which we drink, drinks well*; *while we walked, the Servants walk'd our horses*.

VII. **Verbs express the three persons of a Pronoun** by six different Terminations in both numbers.

For the Active form.	M. } S. T.		MUS. TIS. NT.
	O. } I. ISTI. T.		MUS. ISTIS. NT. ERE.
Persons.	I. Thou. He.		We. Ye. They.
Passive form.	R. RIS. } TUR.		MUR. MINI NTUR.
	RE. }		

Each Verb having the character of a person in it self, the personal Pronouns are rarely prefix'd unto it: but English Verbs (wanting that variety of termination) are seldom us'd without them.

VIII. Verbs express the three differences of time [before, now, after] in six several manners called Tenses.

1. The Present Tense denotes the thing NOW doing; as, I read, or DO read, or AM reading.

2. The Imperfect notes a thing now doing but not finished; as, I DID write, (or WAS writing) a Letter when the Post went out.

3. The Perfect notes a thing already done; as, I HAVE read, or HAVE been reading.

4. The Pluperfect notes something done a while since; as, I HAD read, or HAD been reading.

5. The Future notes something to be done hereafter; as, I SHALL or WILL read, or BE reading.

6. The Preter-future notes that (of two things to come) one is supposed to be past, before the other is to be done; as, When I SHALL HAVE read one Page, I WILL shut the Book.

IX. There are in Verbs four Moods to show the manner of doing. Indicative, Imperative, Potential, Infinitive.

1. The Indicative positively affirms something done, a doing, or to be done. As, I (DO-DID-HAVE-HAD-SHALL or WILL) read.

2. The Imperative signifies something to be done at another's Command; as, Read thou, do thou (or thou shalt) read.

This is accounted no distinct Mood by some, but only a second Future in the Indicative. It hath no first person of its own, but supplies it as well as borrows others from the Indicative and Potential, as, I will read, thou shalt read, let us read.

3. The

3. **The Potential denotes the liberty of doing; as, I may or might read: or the power; as, I can or could read: or necessity; as, I ought or should read.**

This Mood is call'd also *Conjunctive*, because it has some conjunction before it express'd or understood, or, *Subjunctive*, because 'tis subjoin'd to some Verb in the foregoing Sentence; or *Optative*, when an Adverb of wishing is set before it; and may as well be termed *Permissive* and *Volitive*: But *Permissive* some way or other implies all these. Note also, that the Indicative and Potential (notwithstanding the grammatical differences between them) are often promiscuously used in Authors.

4. **The Infinitive notes onely the naked Signification of the Verb without any distinction of Person, Number or Tense; but what it receives from other words in construction with it. The english Sign TO is often set before it; as, TO read.**

The Infinitive is resolv'd into the Potential, and in the English more commonly express'd by its sign, than by TO.

To this Mood do belong the *Gerund* and *Supine* of a Verb, because they are often used for the Infinitive, and signify the same, onely they have casual Signs prefix'd like a Noun.

X. **The Gerund is a Verbal Noun of the second Declension of the Neuter Gender in UM; as, N. Acc. Hoc Legendum. G. Legendi. D. Ab. Legendo.**

A Gerund is English'd in this manner; NOM. *Legendum* (*lectio*) *est mihi*: I must read, or there is a reading for me. *Utilitas GEN. Legendi* (*lectiois*) *legentibus excitat*. ACC. *ad legendum*: The advantage of Reading encourages the reader to reading. DAT. *Legendo* (*lectiois*) *deditus doctus* ABL. *Legendo* (*lectiois* *lectiois*) *disaffatur*: One given to reading is tired with reading too long.

XI. **The Supine is a Verbal Noun of the fourth Declension varied in this manner; N. Ac. Lectum, D. Ab. Lectu.**

A Supine is thus English'd, NOM. *Actum est* *Tis Done*. *Cessatum est satis*: There has been loitering enough. DAT. *Audire* (*auditionis*) *periculum*: Delightfull to the hearing. ACC. *Properas te perditum* (*te perdere, ad te perdendum, ad te perditionem*:) You make halt to (destroy your self) your own destruction. *Liber dignus lectu* (*lectiois, legi, qui legatur*:) A Book worthy to be read, or worth the reading.

Whether Gerunds and Supines signify Actively or Passively (for they do both) may be judg'd by the Verb from whence they are deriv'd, or the construction of the Sentence, where they are placed. See the *Syntax*.

XII. The Conjugation of a Verb is the Variation of it in all its Persons, Numbers, Modes and Tenses. The Conjugation of the Verb Substantive SUM, and its Compounds.

SUM, ES, ESSE: FUI, FUTURUS.

INDICATIVE. Present. POTENTIAL.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
SUM I am.	SUMUS We are.	SIM am, may,	SIMUS.
ES Thou art.	ESTIS Ye are.	SIS or	SITIS.
EST He is.	SUNT They are.	SIT let be.	SINT.
POTSUM, POTES, POTEST.		POSIM, POSSIS, POSSIT.	

Imperfect.

Eram was.	ERAMUS were.	Essem was,	EssemUS.
ERAS wast.	ERATIS were.	EsSES or might	EssetIS.
ERAT was.	ERANT were.	Esset be.	EssetNT.
POTERAM, &c.		POSSEM, &c.	FOREM.

Future.

ERO shall or	ERIMUS.	Fuero shall	Fuerimus.
ERIS will	ERIMUS.	Fueris have	Fueritis.
ERIT be.	ERUNT.	Fuerit been.	Fuerint.
POTERO, &c.		POTUERO, &c.	

Preter-future.

Perfect.

Fui have	Fuimus.	Fuerim have	Fuerimus.
Fuisti	Fuistis.	Fueris	Fueritis.
Fuit been.	Fuerunt. or	Fuerit been.	Fuerint.
POTUI, &c.	[Fuere.	POTUERIM, &c.	

Pluperfect.

Fueram had	Fueramus.	Fuissem had	FuissemUS.
Fueras	Fueratis.	Fuisses	FuissetIS.
Fuerat been.	Fuerant.	Fuisset been.	FuissentNT.
POTUERAM, &c.		POTUISSEM, &c.	

IMPERATIVE.

ES be thou.	ESTE be ye.
ESTO be thou.	ESTOTE be ye.
ESTO let	SUNTO let
him be.	them be.
Possum no Imperative.	

INFINITIVE.

Pr. Esse to be.	Posse.
Perf. Fuisse	Potuisse.
to have or had been.	
Fut. FORE, or Futurum	
Esse to be hereafter.	

1. This Verb *SUM* being (as it were) the root of all Verbs, and the general Model of all Conjugations, is first placed to facilitate the learning of the rest; wherein if the young Learner shall diligently observe the *Formatives* of the *Persons* according to the *Scheme*, *Nom.* VII. and the resemblance of the *cognate* and *Synonymous* Tenses, the formation of all other Verbs will be obvious at the first trial.

2. *Ferem* and *Fere* (by contraction for *Fuérins* and *Fuère*, from *Fui*;) are used for *Essem*, and *Futurum esse*; altho *Fere* is often joyned with *prater*, as (well as *fuere*) participles in the signification of *esse*.

3. The compounds *Ab-ad-da-in-inter-ob-pat-is-pra-pro-sub-super-SUM*, are declined like the *Simple*, only *pro* before a Vowel takes (*d*), as *Profum*, I profit, *prodes*, *proderam*, *prodero*, &c. there is a greater variation in *Possum* I am able, and therefore every Tense is set down under *Sum*. If the Verb begins with *S*, *Pat* is *Pas*, if with a Vowel, or other Consonant, *Pur*. only *essum*, *esse*, are made *passum*, *posse*, and *F* is lost after *T*, as *Potui* for *Potui*. The reason of which changes in this and other compound Verbs, is to prevent the clashing of *dissimilar* sounds, and preserve an *Euphony* in the prolation.

4. *Sum* has no Gerunds, Supines, nor Participle present, only *Absens*, *præsum*, *potens*. But *ens* and *essendi* are Philosophical, rather than classical words.

Of Verbs Adjectives in *O* and *OR*, distributed into four Conjugations, and distinguished by their Infinitives, in manner following.

I. **T**HE first Conjugation is known by A long in *ARE* or *ARI*, from *O* and *OR*, as,

Amo, *Amor*, make *Amāre*, *Amāri*. To love.

II. The second Conjugation is known by E long in *ERE* or *ERI*, from *EO* and *EOR*, as,

Moneo, *Moneor*, make *Monēre*, *Monēri*. To warn.

III. The third Conjugation is known by I long in *IRE* or *IRI*, from *IO* and *IOR*, as,

Audio, *Audior*, make *Audire*, *Audiri*. To hear.

IV. The fourth Conjugation uses the Vowels of the second and third, and is known by E short in *ERE* from *O* or *IO*; or *I* from *OR* and *IOR*, as,

Rego, *Regor*; *Regere*, *Regi*. To rule.

Fodio, *Fodior*; *Fodere*, *Fodi*. To dig.

The most natural order of the Conjugations would be (as the Reverend Dr. Busby, Eng. Introd. p. 30. advises,) to place the short and uncontracted Verb first; but the ease and convenience of the Learner has prevail'd for the present method to be proved by further Trial.

The first Conjugation in O, making ARE long.

1. AMO. 2. AMAS. 3. AMARE. 4. AMANS.
5. AMAVI. 6. AMATUM.

INDICATIVE. Present. POTENTIAL.

AmO <i>I love, or do love.</i>	AmeM <i>I love, or * may love.</i>
Amas <i>Thou lovest, or dost love.</i>	AmeS <i>Thou lovest, or mayst love.</i>
Amat <i>He loveth, loves, or doth l.</i>	AmeT <i>He loveth, or * may love.</i>
Amamus <i>We love, or do love.</i>	AmeMUS <i>We love, or may love.</i>
Amatis <i>Ye love, or do love.</i>	AmeTIS <i>Ye love, or may love.</i>
Amant <i>They love, or do love.</i>	AmeNT <i>They love, or * may love.</i>

* Or let me, him, them love.

Imperfect.

AmabaM <i>I loved, or did love.</i>	AmareM <i>I loved, or might love.</i>
AmabaS <i>Thou lovedst, or didst l.</i>	AmareS <i>Thou lovedst, or mightst l.</i>
AmabaT <i>He loved, or did love.</i>	AmareT <i>He loved, or might love.</i>
Amabamus <i>We loved, or did l.</i>	AmareMUS <i>We loved, or might l.</i>
AmabaTIS <i>Ye loved, or did love.</i>	AmareTIS <i>Ye loved, or might l.</i>
AmabaNT <i>They loved, or did l.</i>	AmareNT <i>They loved, or might l.</i>

Future.

Præter-Future.

Amabo <i>I shall, or will love.</i>	Amavero <i>I shall have loved.</i>
Amabis <i>Thou shalt or wilt love.</i>	Amaveris <i>Thou shalt have loved.</i>
Amabit <i>He shall or will love.</i>	Amaverit <i>He shall have loved.</i>
Amabimus <i>We shall or will l.</i>	Amaverimus <i>We shall have l-d.</i>
AmabitIS <i>Ye shall or will love.</i>	AmaveritIS <i>Ye shall have l-d.</i>
AmabuNT <i>They shall or will l.</i>	AmaveriNT <i>They shall have l-d.</i>

Perfect.

Amavi <i>I have loved.</i>	Amaverim <i>I have, or might have loved, &c.</i>
Amavisti <i>Thou hast loved.</i>	<i>This tense differs from the præter-futura only in the first person singular, and in being pronounc'd short in the 1. and 2. person. Plural.</i>
Amavit <i>He hath loved.</i>	
Amavimus <i>We have loved.</i>	
AmavistiS <i>Ye have loved.</i>	
Amaverunt <i>They have loved.</i>	

or Amavere. } They have loved.

Pluperfect.

Amaveram <i>I had loved.</i>	Amavissem <i>I had loved.</i>
Amaveras <i>Thou hadst loved.</i>	AmavisSES, <i>This and all other</i>
AmaveraT <i>He had loved.</i>	AmavisSET, <i>Tenses of this mood</i>
Amaveramus <i>We had loved.</i>	AmavissemUS, <i>are commonly en-</i>
Amaveratis <i>Ye had loved.</i>	AmavisSETIS, <i>glished as the In-</i>
AmaveraNT <i>They had loved.</i>	AmavisSENT, <i>dicative.</i>

The

The first Conjugation in OR making ARI long.

1. AMOR. 2. AMARIS-RE. 3. AMARI. 4. AMANDUS.
5. AMATUS.

INDICATIVE.

Present.

POTENTIAL.

AmoR *I am loved.*

AmāRIS-RE *Thou art loved.*

AmāTUR *He is loved.*

AmāMUR *We are loved.*

AmāMINI *Ye are loved.*

AmāNTUR *They are loved.*

AmeR* *I may be loved.*

AmēRIS-RE *Thou mayst be l-d.*

AmēTUR *He may be loved.*

AmēMUR *We may be loved.*

AmēMINI *Ye may be loved.*

AmenTUR *They may be loved.*

* Or, *let me be loved.*

Imperfect.

AmābaR *I was loved.*

AmabāRIS-RE *Thou wast loved.*

AmabāTUR *He was loved.*

AmabāMUR *We were loved.*

AmabāMINI *Ye were loved.*

AmabāNTUR *They were loved.*

AmāreR *I was loved.*

AmarēRIS-RE, *When those Signs,*

AmarēTUR, *might, would, could,*

AmarēMUR, *should, ought, are so*

AmāreMINI, *be us'd, the constru-*

AmarēNTUR, *tion will shew.*

Future.

AmāboR *I shall, will be loved.*

AmabēRIS-RE *Thou shalt, wilt*

AmabiTUR *He shall, will be*

AmabiMUR *We shall, will be*

AmabiMINI *Ye shall, will be*

AmabuNTUR *They shall, will*

Prater-Future.

AmāTUS FuerO *I shall have been loved, &c.*

This, and the following Tenses of this Mood are supplied by SUM and the Prater-participle.

Perfect.

AmāTUS SuM, or FuI *I have been loved.*

This, and the following Tense of this Mood are supplied by SUM, and the Passive-participle of the prater-tense.

AmāTUS Sim, or FueriM. *I have been loved.*

The Potential Signs are often (and more conveniently) express'd by distinct Verbs of the same signification.

Pluperfect.

AmāTUS EraM, or Fueram *I had been loved, &c.*

AmāTUS Essem, or FuissēM *I had been loved, &c.*

(Note) The Potential Signs *MAY, MIGHT, CAN, COULD*, are express'd by *Possū, valeo, queo, licet*; *WOULD*, by *Volo, libet*; *OUGHT* and *SHOULD*, by *Debeo, decet, oportet, opus est*, &c.

The first Conjugation in O making ARE long.

IMPERATIVE.

AmA, AmāTo love *Thou*, or *Do Thou* love.

AmāTO let *him* love.

AmāTE, AmatōTE love *Ye*, or *Do You* love.

AmaNTO let *them* love.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. AmāRE To love, or that *one* *did* love.

Perf. AmavISSE To have, or had loved.

Fut. AmatuRUM ESSE *will*, *about*, or *likely* to love.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. Hic, *hæc*, *hoc*, AmaNS *one* that loves, or is loving.

Fut. AmatuRUS-RA-RUM *one* that shall, will, is about, or likely to love.

GERUNDS. SUPINES.

AmandUM, AmaTUM, *Must*, or *to* love. *To* love.

AmanDI, AmaTU, *Of* loving. *To* be loved.

Amando, *For*, *in*, *By*, loving.

Some usefull Observations concerning the English Verb.

1. The English Verb has commonly but one Termination besides its Theme, as, I Love, I have Loved; I Forsake, I have Forsaken. This Termination is either ED, (which is often contracted into D, or T; as, Loved, Lov'd; Passed, Past:) or EN, (which is also contracted into N;) as, Green, gone; Doen, Done.

2. From these 2 formatives of the Præter-tense, some have assign'd two conjugations for English Verbs: but besides these Terminations added to the Theme, there is often a change also in the Vowels of it, as, I keep, I have kept; so leave, left; hold, held; stand, stood; teach, taught; bring, brought; with divers other changes in Verbs of the first form in ED. Those of the second form in EN, besides the change of Vowels, often form a third Termination, for the Præter-imperfect. As, I give, I gave or did give; I have given: So, See, saw, seen; Speak, spake, spoken, with many others.

3. These 2 Terminations (for the third is not necessary) are sufficient with the Auxiliary Verbs to answer all the differences of time, and Modes of signification both in the Active and Passive Forms; and this also with such nice exactness, (tho not with equal artifice and elegance,) as to exceed in expressiveness the Latine Verb it self.

4. Concerning the use of the Auxiliaries observe, that these DO, DID, SHALL, WILL, MAY, CAN, MIGHT, COULD, SHOULD, WOULD-Love, are set before the Theme: And HAVE, HAD, AM, WAS, BE, BEEN-Loved, before the Tense made by the Formatives, D, T, N.

5. Observe that English Verbs distinguish the second Person Sing. by EST or ST, and the third by ETH or S; as Thou lovest, or lov'st; He loveth or loves; all the other Terminations are the same with the first, and distinguish'd only by Pronouns prefix'd.

The first Conjugation in OR making ARI long.

IMPERATIVE.

INFINITIVE.

AMARE, AmāTOR, *We thou* Pres. AmāRI *To be loved.*

loved Perf. AmāTUM *Esse, Fuisse,*
AmāTOR *Let him be loved.* *was, or had been loved.*

AmaMINI *We ye loved* Fut. AmāTUM *iri will, or*

AmanTOR *Let them be loved.* *would be loved. or [loved.*
AmanDUM *Esse shall or must be*

PARTICIPLES.

GERUNDS. SUPINES.

Pres. AmāTUS *One that is, or* No Gerunds and Supines belong to
hath been loved. *Verbs in OR, unless they signi-*

Fut. AmanDUS *One that is, or* *fie Actively: such as are depe-*
shall be loved. *nents or common; At, Testor, to*

Verbs in OR signifying actively, witness; Criminor, to accuse.
do form all the four Participles.

6. The Auxiliaries imitate (for the most part) the same distinction, as, I *Do*, Thou *dost* or *do'st*, He *doeth*, *do'th* or *do's*, We, Ye, They *do*, so *did*, *did'st* or *did'st*, *did* (for *dideth*.) Have, ha'st (for *havesst*.) hath (for *havesst*.) But *SHALL*, *WILL* make (in the second Sing.) *SHALT*, *WILT*, nor do *shall*, *will*, *did*, *had*, *may*, *can*, *might*, *could*, *would*, *should*, *ought*, vary any but the second person only.

7. When the Auxiliary is prefix'd, the Verb remains unchanged. I do *Love*, Thou *dost Love*, He *doth Love*, &c. Also observe, that the Theme without an Auxiliary, is the present Tense, and the formed Tense in *P*, *T*, without an Auxiliary is the imperfect. But a Tense formed in *EN* or *N*, is never Imperfect, unless in the Passive Voice, as, I was *given*, in the Active, I *did give*, or I *gave*, but never I *given*. And this is the reason, why many Verbs of this second Conjugation do form a third Termination for the Imperfect, because the preter in *EN* (will not like those in *D*, *T*.) express that Tense.

8. Observe, that the Tenses of the Potential and Infinitive Moods are in themselves of an Indefinite Time and Signification; and what English Signs to apply unto them, must be discern'd by the Verb, Participle, Adverb, or Conjunction, on which those Moods do depend in Grammatical Construction. As, *Hic quā fuerit abstinentiā, nullum certius est indicium, quā quod, cum tantis rebus profuisset, instanti paupertate decessit, ut qui effervescit, vix reliquerit*: Of what abstinence he was, there is no sign more certain, than that, when he HAD BEEN employed in so great affairs, he departed in so great poverty, that he scarce left, where, with he MIGHT be buried. *Nam possum scribere, me miratum esse, illum tam inhumaniter fecisse, ut sine meis literis ad se proficisceretur: illud scito, mihi molestum fuisse*: I cannot say; that I wonder, that he should have done so unkindly, as to go to you without my Letters: this I say, that it has been a trouble to me. These two instances may give the Learner some little direction, till his better acquaintance with the proprieties of the English and Latin Languages shall enlarge his observations.

The second Conjugation in EO, making ERE long.

1. MONEO. 2. MONES. 3. MONERE. 4. MONENS.
5. MONUI. 6. MONITUM.

INDICATIVE.

Present.

POTENTIAL.

I warn, or do warn.
MónEO, MonēMUS.
MónES, MonēTIS.
MónET, MoneNT.

I do, may, or let me warn.
MonēaM, MoneāMUS.
MonēaS, MoneāTIS.
MonēaT, MoneaNT.

Imperfect.

I warned, or did warn.
MonēbaM, MonebāMUS.
MonēbaS, MonebāTIS.
MonēbaT, MonēbaNT.

I did, should, or might warn.
MonēreM, MonerēMUS.
MonēreS, MonerēTIS.
MonēreT, MonereNT.

Future.

Præter-Future.

I shall, or will warn.
MonēbO, MonebīMUS.
MonēbiS, MonebīTIS.
MonēbiT, MonēbuNT.

I shall have warned.
MonuērO, MonuerīMUS.
MonuēriS, MonueriTIS.
MonuēriT, MonuēriNT.

Perfect.

I have warned.
Monuī, MonuīMUS.
MonuīSTI, MonuīSTIS.
MonuīT, MonuēruNT-ERE.

I have, or might have warned.
MonuēriM, MonuerīMUS.

The remaining Terminations the same as above.

Pluperfect.

I had warned.
MonuēraM, MonuerāMUS.
MonuēraS, MonuerāTIS.
MonuēraT, MonuerāNT.

I had warned.
MonuēreM, MonuissēMUS.
MonuissēS, MonuissēTIS.
MonuissēT, MonuissēNT.

IMPERATIVE.

INFINITIVE.

warn Thou. warn Tū.
Monē, MonēTE.
MonēTO. MonēcōTE.
Let him warn. Let them warn.
MonēTO. MoneNTO.

Pr. MonēRE to warn.
Perf. MonuissE to have, or had warned.

Fut. Monitūrum Esse will, shall, about, or likely to warn.

PARTICIPLES.

GERUNDS. SUPINES.

Pr. MonENS one that warns, or is warning.
Fut. MonitūRUS One that shall (will, is about, or likely to) warn.

MonendUM. MonitUM.
To, or must warn. To warn.
Monendi. MonitU.
Of warning. To be warned.
Monendo For, In warning.

The

The second Conjugation in EOR, making ERI long.

1. MONEOR. 2. MONERIS-RE. 3. MONERĒ
4. MONENDUS. 5. MONITUS.

INDICATIVE. Present. POTENTIAL.

I am warned.

I may, (or let me) be warned.

MonEOR. MonēMUR.

MoneaR.

MoneāMUR.

MonēRIS-RE. MoneMINI.

MoneāRIS-RE. MoneaMINI.

MonēTUR. MoneNTUR.

MoneaTUR. MoneaNTUR.

Imperfect.

I was warned.

I was, or might be warned.

MonēbaR. MonebāMUR.

MonēreR.

MonerēMUR.

MonebāRIS-RE. MonebāMINI.

MonerēRIS-RE. MonerēMINI.

MonebāTUR. MonebāNTUR.

MonerēTUR. MonerēNTUR.

Future.

Præter-Future.

I shall, or will be warned.

I shall have been warned.

MonēboR. MonebiMUR.

Monitus FuoO. *This Mood has*

MonebēRIS-RE. MonebīMINI.

but two formed Tenses, the rest are

MonebitUR. MonebūNTUR.

supply'd by SUM, and a Participle.

Perfect.

I have been warned.

I have, (or might have been)

MoniTUS Sum, or FuI.

This warned.

Mood has but three formed Tenses, MoniTUS Sim, or FuiM.

the rest supply'd by SUM and a Participle.

Pluperfect.

I had been warned.

I had been warned.

MoniTUS EraM, or FueraM.

MoniTUSEssem, or FuisseM.

The Participle varies its number with the Verb, and changes its gender as the Nominative (before the Verb) requires.

IMPERATIVE.

INFINITIVE.

MonēRE. MonēMINI.

Pr. MonēRI To be warned.

MonēTOR. *Be ye warned.*

Perf. MoniTUM Esse, Fuisse *To*

Be thou warned. MoneNTOR.

have, or had been warned.

MonēTOR. *Let them be*

Fut. MoniTUM iri will, would,

Let him be warned. warned.

or should be. MonendUM Esse

must, or shall be warned.

PARTICIPLES.

GERUNDS. SUPINES.

Pres. MoniTUS *One that is, (or hath been) warned.*

If a Verb of the Passive form has an Active signification, it takes

Fut. MonendUS *One that shall,*

so is both Gerunds and Supines,

(or is to be) warned.

and the Participles also of a

Verb in O.

The

The third Conjugation in IO, making IRE long.

1. AUDIO. 2. AUDIS. 3. AUDIRE. 4. AUDIENS.
5. AUDIVI. 6. AUDITUM.

INDICATIVE.

Present.

POTENTIAL.

I hear, or do hear.

AudiO. AudiMUS.

AudiS. AudiTIS.

AudiT. AudiUNT.

Eo, Is, It. Imus, &c. I go.

I do, may, (or let me) hear.

AudiāM. AudiāMUS.

AudiāS. AudiāTIS.

AudiāT. AudiāNT.

Eam, Ear, &c. I may go.

Imperfect.

I heard, or did hear.

AudiebāM. AudiebāMUS.

AudiebāS. AudiebāTIS.

AudiebāT. AudiebāNT.

Ibam, Ibas, &c. I went, or did go.

Future.

I shall, or will hear.

AudiāM. AudiēMUS.

Audiēs. AudiētIS.

Audiēt. Audiēnt.

Ibo, Ibis, Ibit. Ibimus, &c.

I did, might, or should hear.

AudireM, AudirēMUS.

Audirēs. AudirētIS.

AudireT. AudireNT.

Irem, Ires, Iret, &c.

Præter-Future.

I shall have heard.

AudivērO. AudiveriMUS.

AudivēriS. AudiveriTIS.

AudivēriT. AudiveriNT.

Ivero, Iveris, &c.

Perfect.

Sight, would, could, have heard.

AudivērīM. AudiveriMUS.

The terminations are the same as the Præter-future.

Iverim, Iveris, &c.

Pluperfect.

I had heard.

AudivērāM. AudiverāMUS.

AudivērāS. AudiverāTIS.

AudivērāT. AudiverāNT.

Iveram, Iveras, &c.

I had heard.

AudivissēM. AudivissēMUS.

AudivissēS. AudivissēTIS.

AudivissēT. AudivissēNT.

Ivissem, Ivisset, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

Audi, AudiTO. AudiTE-toTE.

AudiTO. Audiunto.

I, Ito. Eunto.

PARTICIPLES.

Pr. AudiENS. Iens.

Fut. AuditorUS. Iturus.

Iens, Euntis, Eunti, &c.

INFINITIVE.

Pr. AudiRE.

Perf. Audivisse.

Fut. AuditorUM esse.

GERUNDS SUPINES.

AudienDUM. AudirUM,

AudienDI. AudirU.

AudienDO. Eundo, Itum, Ito.

The third Conjugation in IOR, making IRI long.

1. AUDIOR. 2. AUDIRIS-RE. 3. AUDIRI.
4. AUDIENDUS. 5. AUDITUS.

INDICATIVE. Present. POTENTIAL.

I am heard.

I may (or let me) be heard.

AudioR. AudimUR.

AudiaR. AudiamUR.

AudirIS-RE. AudimINI.

AudiarIS-RE. AudiamINI.

AuditUR. AudiuntUR.

AudiatUR. AudiantUR.

Fis, Fir, Fimus, &c. made, or done. Fiam, -as, -at. Fiamus, &c.

Imperfect.

I was heard.

I was (or might be) heard.

AudiebaR. AudiebamUR.

AudireR. AudiremUR.

AudiebāRIS-RE. AudiebāMINI.

AudirēRIS-RE. AudirēMINI.

AudiebaTUR. AudiebaNTUR.

AudirēTUR. AudireNTUR.

Fiebam, -bas, -bat. Fiebamus, &c. Fierem, -as, -at. (for Fierem, &c.)

Future.

Preter-Future.

I shall, or will be heard.

I shall have been heard.

AudiaR. AudiēMUR.

AuditUS Fuēro, &c. Here Fio

AudiēRIS-RE. AudiēMINI.

borrows the Participle Factus from

AudiēTUR. AudiēNTUR.

Facior, not read, but in its Com-

Fiam, -as, -at. Fiamus, &c.

pounds, as Af-con-de-es-facior.

Perfect.

I have been heard.

I might have been heard.

AuditUS Sum, or Fui, &c.

AuditUS Sim, or Fuērim, &c.

Fio has the same number of formed Tenses, and the same way of sup-
plying the defective ones, as a Verb in OR.

Pluperfect.

I had been heard.

I had been heard.

AuditUS Eram, or Fuēram, &c. AuditUS Essem, or Fuissem, &c.

Fio being mixt of the Active and Passive Form, is placed under Audia-
or, for the sake of its signification, and near Audio, for its inflection.

IMPERATIVE.

INFINITIVE.

Audire-TOR. AudimINI.

Pr. Audiri. Fieri (for Firi.)

2. Fito. 3. Fito. Fite, Fitote.

Perf Auditum (Factum) esse, fuisse.

AuditOR. Fiuato. AudiuntOR.

Fut. Auditum (Factum) iri.

Audiendum (Faciendum) esse.

PARTICIPLES.

GERUNDS. SUPINES.

Pat. AudienDUS. Faciendus.

Actives in IOR, as Largior to

Pres. AuditUS. Factus.

give, Partior to divide, have

Actives in OR, have usually all
the four Participles.

Gerunds and Supines.

G

The

The fourth Conjugation in O, (sometimes IO,)
 *making ERE short.*1. REGO. 2. REGIS. 3. REGERE. 4. REGENS.
5. REXI. 6. RECTUM.

INDICATIVE. Present. POTENTIAL.

*I rule, or do rule.**I do, may (or let me) rule.*

RegO. RegiMUS.

RegaM. RegāMUS.

Regis. RegiTIS.

RegaS. RegāTIS.

RegiT. ReguNT.

RegaT. RegāNT.

* Fodlo, -dis, -dit. Fodimus, &c. * Fodlam, -las, -lat Fodlamus, &c.

Imperfect.

*I ruled, or did rule.**I did (might, or should) rule.*

RegēbāM. RegēbāMUS.

RegēreM. RegerēMUS.

RegēbaS. RegēbāTIS.

RegēreS. RegerēTIS.

RegēbaT. RegēbaNT.

RegēreT. RegerēNT.

* Fodlēbam, -as, -at -āmus, -atis, -ant. Fodlerem, &c. Foderēmus.

Future.

Preter-Future.

*I shall, or will rule.**I shall have ruled.*

RegāM. RegēMUS.

RexerO. RexerīMUS.

RēgeS. RegēTIS.

RexerīS. RexerīTIS.

RēgeT. RegerēNT.

RexerīT. RexerīNT.

* Fodlam, -les, -let. Iemus, &c. Fodēro, -is, -it, &c.

Perfect.

*I have ruled.**I might, could have ruled.*

Rexī. RexīMUS.

Rexīrim, &c. Foderim, &c.

RexīSTI. RexīSTIS.

Fodio is placed in this Conjugation, as an example of the misinflection of a Verb in IO.

RexīT. RexeruNT-ēRE.

Fodi, -isti, -it, &c.

I had ruled.

Pluperfect.

I had ruled.

RexērāM. RexērāMUS.

RexīsseM. RexīsseMUS.

RexērāS. RexērāTIS.

RexīsseS. RexīsseTIS.

RexērāT. RexērāNT.

RexīsseT. RexīsseNT.

Foderam, -as, &c.

Fodissem, -as, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

INFINITIVE

Regē Fodē, -ito, -ite. RegīTE.

Pr. RegēRE. Fodēre.

RegīTO, Fod to-tōte. RegītōTE.

Perf. RexīSSE. Fodisse.

3. RegīTO. Fodito. Regunto.

Fut. RecturUM esse. Fessurum.

PARTICIPLES.

GERUNDS. SUPINES

Pr. RegENS. * Fodlens.

RegendUM-DI. RectUM-U.

Fut. RecturUS. Fessurus.

* Fodlendum-di. Fessum-a.

* In those Persons or Tenses, only Fodio is irregular, where it has a Capital I.

The

The fourth Conjugation in OR, (sometimes IOR)

making I in the Infinitive.

1. REGOR. 2. REGERIS-RE. 3. REGI. 4. REGENDUS.
-
5. RECTUS.

INDICATIVE.

Present.

POTENTIAL.

I am ruled.

REGOR. REGIMUR.

REGERIS-RE. REGIMINI.

REGITUR. REGUNTUR.

* Fodlor, -eris, -itur, -imur, -iuntur.

I may (or let me) be ruled.

REGAR. REGAMUR.

REGARIS-RE. REGAMINI.

REGATUR. REGANTUR.

* Fodlar, -laris, -latur, -lantur.

Imperfect.

I was ruled.

REGEBAR. REgebAMUR.

REgebARIS-RE. REgebAMINI.

REgebATUR. REgebanTUR.

* Fodlebar, &c. * Fodlebamur, &c.

I was (or might be) ruled.

REGERE. REgerEMUR.

REgerERIS-RE. REgerEMINI.

REgerETUR. REgerENTUR.

* Fodēter, &c. * Fodēmur, &c.

Future.

Preter-Future.

I shall, or will be ruled.

REGAR. REGEMUR.

REGERIS-RE. REgemINI.

REGETUR. REGENTUR.

* Fodlar, -laris, &c. Fodlēmur, &c.

I shall have been ruled.

RECTUS FuERO. Fossus.

The defective Tenses are in both
Moods supplied as in the former
Conjugations.These 15 Verbs in IO or IOR, (with their Compounds) are of a mixed
Inflection, imitating the third and fourth Conjugation, As,

Cipio to take.

Gradior to step.

Patio to suffer.

Cupio to covet.

Jacio to cast.

Quatio to shake.

Facio to make.

† Lacio to entice.

† Specio to behold.

Fodio to dig.

Morio to die.

Rapio to ravish.

Fugio to fly.

Pario to bring forth.

Sapio to savour.

Those Tenses or Persons that are mark'd with an (*) Asterisk, or have
the Capital (I,) do imitate the long Verb Audio, the rest are like Rego.

IMPERATIVE.

INFINITIVE.

REGERE. Fodere. REGIMINI.

REGITOR. Foditor. Fodimini.

3. REGITOR. * Fodluntor. Regun-
TOR.

Pr. RegI. Fodi.

Perf. RECTUM esse, fuisse. Fossus.

RECTUM iri, or Regendum esse.
Fossus. * Fodlendum.

PARTICIPLES.

GERUNDS. SUPINES.

Fut. Regendus. * Fodlendus.

Perf. RECTUS. Fossus.

Actives in OR and IOR, have u-
sually all the four Participles.Actives in OR and IOR, as Lo-
quor to speak, Sequor to follow,
Patio to suffer, have Gerunds and
Supines.

To the Conjugation of Short Verbs do belong **VOLO** *to will, or desire*, (with its Compounds **NOLO** (of Non volo) *to will, or refuse, or be unwilling*; **MALO** (of Magis volo) *to chuse, prefer, or rather have*;) **EDO** *to eat*, **FERO** *to fetch and carry, bear or suffer*; all which are in their Formation, somewhat irregular.

1. **VOLO.** 2. **VIS.** 3. **VELLE.** 4. **VOLENS.** 5. **VOLUI.**
No Supine.

INDICATIVE.	Present.	POTENTIAL.
<i>I will (or do desire to) have.</i>	<i>I would have.</i>	
Völo. * Vis. * Vult.	* Velim. * Vëlis. * Vëlit.*	
* Völimus. * Vultis. Volunt.	* Vëlimus. * Vëlitis. * Vëlint.	

Imperfect.

<i>I willed, or desired.</i>	<i>I could wish, or desire.</i>
Volëbam. Volëbas. Volëbat, &c.	* Vellem. * Velles. * Vellet.
<i>Regular like Regëbam.</i>	* Vellëmus. * Vellëtis. * Vellent.

Future.

Preter-Future.

Völam. Völes. Völet, &c.	Voluëro. Voluëris. Voluërit, &c.
<i>Regular as Regam.</i>	<i>Regular, as Rexero,</i>

Perfect.

Volui. Voluisti. Voluit, &c.	Voluerim, Volueris, &c.
---	------------------------------------

Pluperfect.

Voluëram. Voluëras, &c.	Voluissëm, Voluissës, &c.
------------------------------------	--------------------------------------

IMPERATIVE.

INFINITIVE.

Nöli-to. Nolite, Nolitöte.	<i>Pres. * Velle. * Nolle. * Malle.</i>
Volo, Malo, want this Mood.	<i>Per. Voluissë. Noluisse. Maluissë.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

GERUNDS. No SUPINES

Volens. Nolens. Malens.	Volëndum. Nolëndum. Malë-
	[dum.]

* The irregularity of Volo consists in contractions, and change of Vowels. So, Vis, Vult, Vultis, for Volis, Volit, Volitis. Velim, Velis, &c. (like Sim, Sis,) for Volam, Volas, &c. Vellem, Velle, &c. for Velerem, Velere, &c. As, Volo, so are Nolo and Malo formed. In prefixing the compounding Particles, (Ma, Non) this rule may be observed.

Put MA and NON Put MA and NO,

Vis, Vultis on.

For VE and VO.

As, MA-NON-Vultis: Volam, NO-MA-lam: VelleM, NO-MA-llem.

1. EDO

1. EDO. 2. EDIS or ES. 3. EDERE or ESSE. 4. EDENS.
5. EDI. 6. ESUM or ESTUM.

INDICATIVE. Present.		POTENTIAL. Imperfect.	
Edo. Edis. Edit. Edimus. Editis. Ederem. -es. -et. -ēmus. -ētis. -ent.		Ederem. -es. -et. -ēmus. -ētis. -ent.	
Est. Est.	Estis. Essent. -et. -et. -ēmus. -ētis. -ent.		

IMPERATIVE.		INFINITIVE.	
Ede. Edito. Edite. Editote.	Edere. In all other Tenses this	Esse. Verb is regular.	
Est. Estis. Estis. Estis.			

1. Fero. 2. Fers. 3. Ferre. 4. Fe- 1. Feror. 2. Ferris-re. 3. Ferri.
rens. 5. Tuli. 6. Latum. 4. Ferendus. 5. Latus.

Present.		INDICATIVE. Present.	
Fero. Ferimus.	Feror. Ferimur.		
Fers. Fertis.	Ferris-re. Ferimini.		
Fert. Ferunt.	Fertur. Feruntur.		

Imperfect.		POTENTIAL. Imperfect.	
Ferrem. Ferrēmus.	Ferret. Ferrēmur.		
Ferres. Ferrētis.	Ferrēis-re. Ferreremini.		
Ferret. Ferrent.	Ferrētur. Ferrentur.		
Imperative. Infinitive.		Imperative. Infinitive.	
Fer. Fertōs. Ferre.	Ferre. Ferimini. Ferri.		
Ferto. Tulisse.	Fertor. Feruntor. Latum esse.		
3. Ferts. Ferunto. Latum esse.	3. Fertor. Latum iri. Ferendū esse.		

The irregularity of this Verb consists in the Omission of *I* or *E* after *R* in some few Tenses and Persons. (As, *Fer*, *Fers*, for *Fere*, *Feris*, &c.) The regular Tenses, (*Ferebam*, *Feram*, &c.) and those borrowed from *Tulo*, (as, *Tuli*, *Tuleram*, &c.) are omitted, as being easily supplied by the Learner from the Analogy of the former Conjugation.

An Alphabetical Table containing the Preterperfect-tenses and Supines of all Verbs Simple and Compound in each Conjugation; wherein *N. P. N. S.* do mean *No Preterperfect. No Supine.* () includes a Preterperfect and Supine *less usual.* C. signifies *Compounded.*

I. The first Conjugation makes AVI, ATUM. As,
Amo, Amare: Amavi, Amatum.

Except these Verbs following,

CR&Po,

- CRĒPo, -ui, -itum, *to crack*. Comp. *In-Dis-crēpo*, -avi, -atum, (ui, itum) *to chide, to differ*.
 CūBo, -ui, -itum, *to ly down*.
 DO, dēdi, dātum, *to give*. C. *Circum-Pessum-Satis-Venun-do*, as the Simple; the rest as *Addo*, *Condo*, &c., of the short Conjug.
 DōMo, -ui, -itum, *to same*.
 FRĪCo, -ui, -tum, *to rub*.
 JūVo, jūvi, jūtum, *to help*.
 LāBo, N. P. *to fault*.
 LāVo, -i, -ātum; lautum, lōtum, *to wash*. C. *Re-lāvo*, -vi, -lōtum; the rest as, *Al-Di-Pre-luo*, of the short Conjug. from *lavo*, &c.
 MĪCo, -ui, N. S. *to shine, except, dimīco* (ui) *avi, atum, to fight*.
 NĒCo, -avi, -atum, (ui, tum) *to kill*. C. *E-Inter-nēco*, -ui, -tū, (avi, atū).
 PLĪCo, -āvi, -ātum; -iī, -iētum, *to fold*. So *Ap-com-ex-im-plīco*; the rest as, *Supplicō*, -avi, -atum, only.
 PōTo, -avi, (Potatum) pōtum, *to drink*.
 SĒCo, -ui, -tum, *to cut*.
 SōNo, -ui, -itum, *to sound*.
 STō, stēti, stātum, *to stand*. C. *stīti, stītum*. (stātum) except, *Circum-stō*, -stēti. N. S. *to surround*.
 TōNo, -ui, -itum, *to thunder*.
 VĒTo, -ui, -itum, *to forbid*.

These Verbs when compounded, do change their first Vowel in all Moods and Tenses:

- CALCo, *to kick*; Inculco, *to ram*. LACTo, *Illesto*, *allure*.
 CANTo, *to sing*; Occento, *to scold*. MANDo, *to entrust*, As, *Com-amendo*; except, *A-de-pa-mando*.
 CAPTo, *catch*; Acepto, *receive*. PATRo, *to perform*, *Impētro*.
 DAMNo, *Condemno*, *to condemn*. SACRo, *to dedicate*, *Consecro*.
 HāLo, *to breath*, Ex. *Exhālo*. SALTo, *to leap*, Ex-in-sulto.
 IACTo, *to toss*; Conjecto, *to guess*. TRACTo, *to handle*, As, *Con-drecto*, Ex-per-re-tracto.
 JūRo, *to swear*, De-pe-juro; the rest, as *Ab-Con-jūro*.

The Second Conjugation in ERE long, makes the Preterperfect Uī, Supine ITUM, &c.,

Monēo. Monēre. Monūi. Monītum.

I. All Verbs in EO are of the Second Conjugation, except *Beo*, *to bless*; *Creo*, *to create*; *Calceo*, *to shoe*; *Enucleo*, *to unshell*; *Laqueo*, *to entangle*; *Nausēo*, *to loath*; *Screo*, *to hawk*; which are Verbs in ARE. *Eo*, *to go*; *Queo*, *to can, or be able*; which are Verbs in IRE.

II. All Neuters in UI want their Supines; except these ten following.

- CāLeo, -ui, -itum, *to be hot*. DōLeo, -ui, -itum, *to be grieved*.
 CāReo, -ui, -itum, *to be void of*. JāCeo, -ui, -itum, *to lie down*.
 LāTeo,

LāTeo, -ui, -itum, *to be hidden.* **oleo**, -evi, (*olui*) *adulterum.*
C. **Delitēo**, -ui, **N. S.** *to lurk.* **PāReo**, -ui, -itum, *to obey.*
NōCeo, -ui, -itum, *to be hurtfull.* **PLā**Ceo, -ui, -itum, *to please.* **C.**
OLēo, -ui, (-itum,) *to savour.* So **Displīcēo**; *except, Bene-com-per-*
placeo.
Ob-per-red-sub-ōlēo. Yet **Ab-in-** **Tā**Ceo, -ui, -itum, *to be silent.* **C.**
(olui,) olitum, olēvi, (olētum.) **Con-re-ticeo.**
And Ex-obi-olēvi, ētum. But **Ad-**

III. These nine Verbs following have no Preterperfect-tense, and therefore no Supine.

Aveo, *to covet or desire.* **Liquet**, *'tis clear or certain.*
Clueo, *to be famous.* **Liveo**, *to be black and blue.*
Denseo, *to grow thick.* **Polleo**, *to be very powerfull or*
prevallent.
Flaveo, *to grow yellow.* **Renideo**, *to shine or smile.*
Glabreo, *to grow smooth.*

IV. All the Verbs following (either in Preterperfect-tense or Supine, or both) do vary from the common Form.

AL-geo, -si, **N. S.** *to be cold.* **FRENDeo**, -i, -fressum, *to grin.*
ARCeo, -ui, (*arctum*) *to drive.* **C.** **FUL**Geo, -si, **N. S.** *to shine.*
Ca-ex-erceo. Except, **Abarceo.** **GAU**Deo, gavissus, *to be glad.*
ARdeo, -si, -sum, *to be on fire.* **HÆ**reo, -si, -sum, *to stick.*
AUDeo, Ausus, *to dare.* **HAB**eo, -ui, -itum, *to have.* So
Ante-post-super-hābeo; But Ad-
AU-geo, -xi, -ctum, *to encrease.* *co-ex-in-per-pro-red-hābeo, -ui,*
CAVeō, -i, crutum, *to beware.* *itum.*
CENSeo, -ui, -um, *to think.* **INDUL**Geo, -si, -tum, *to humour.*
CIEo, -ciēvi, -ctum, *to stir up.* **Jū**beo, -si, -ssum, *to command.*
Con-Niveo, -vi, (xi) **N. S.** *to wink.* **LANG**ueo, -ui; **N. S.** *to languish.*
DELeo, -vi, -tum, *to destroy.* **LIB**et, -uit, -itum, *'tis pleaseth.*
DŌCeo, -ui, -tum, *to teach.* **Li**Cet, -uit, -itum, *'tis lawfull.*
EGeo, -ui, **N. S.** *to be in want of.* **LIQ**ueo, -licui, **N. S.** *to melt.*
C. **Indlgeo**, -ui, **N. S.** **Lū**Ceo, luxi, **N. S.** *to shine.*
FāTeor, fassus, *to confess.* **C.** **Con-** **Lū**Geo, fluxi, luctum, *to mourn.*
pro-siteor, fessius. But **Disī**teor, **MAN**eo, -si, -sum, *to tarry.* So **Per-**
N. P. *to deny.* **re-māneo; But E-im pra-pro-su-**
FāVeō, -i, factum, *to savour.* **pere-mīneo, -ui, N. S.**
FERVeō, -ui, -i, **N. S.** *to be hot.* **Mē**Deor, mēdicatus, *to cure.*
FLEo, -vi, -tum, *to lament.* **MOE**reo, maestus, *to be sad.*
FŌVeō, -i, fōtum, *to cherish.* **MIS**ceo, -cui, -tum, *to mix.*
FRJgeo, -xi, **N. S.** *to be cold.*

MISEReor,

MISEReor, -tus, to pity.	cum-super-ſcedeo; But Af-con-de-
MISERet, -tum, to pities.	circum-di-in-ab-præ-re-sub-fide-
MORDeo, mōmordi, morſum, to bite; C. ac Remordi, morſum.	o, ſedi, ſeſſum.
MōVeο, -vi, -tum, to move.	SōLeo, -itus, to uſe or be want.
MULceo, -ſi, -ſum, to appeaſe.	SORbeo, -ui, -pſi, -tum, to ſoup. So
MULgeo, -ſi, -xi, -ctum, to milk.	Abſorbeo; But Ex-re-ſorbeo, an-
NEο, -vi, -tum, to ſpin.	ly ſorbui.
OLeo, -ui, -itum, to ſavour. So Ob-	SPONDeo, ſpoſpon-di, ſponſum.
per-red-sub-oleo; Yet, Ex-obs-	C. De-re-ſpon-di, -ſum.
oleo, -ēvi, -ctum. But Ab-in-	STRiDeo, -i, N. S. to creak.
oleo, -ēvi, (-ctum, -eri,) itum;	SUadeo, -ſi, -ſum, to perſwade.
And Ad-oleo, -ēvi, (-ui,) adultū,	TēNeo, -ui, -tum, to bold. C. Ab-
PāTeo, -ui, N. S. to be open.	con-de-diſ-ob-re-ſuſ-tineo, -ui,
PāVeο, pāvi, N. S. to be afraid.	tentum; but At-per-tinui, N.S.
PENDeo, pēpendi, N.S. to hang. C.	TERgeo, -ſi, -ſum, to wipe.
Ap-de-im-pro-ſuſ-pendi. N. S.	TiMeο, -ui, N. S. to fear.
Com-PLeo, -vi, -tum, to fulfill.	TONDeo, tēton-di, tonſum, to
Per-TÆdet, -duit, -ſūeſt, it tires.	clip. C. De-ton-di, tonſum.
PiGeт, -uit, -itum, it troubles.	TORquēo, -ſi, -tum, to wreſt.
PūDet, -uit, -itum, it ſhames.	TORReo, -ui, toſtum, to roaſt.
PRANDeo, -di, -ſum, to dine.	TURgeo, -ſi, N. S. to ſwell.
REOR, -ritus, to think.	ViDeo, -i, viſum, to ſee.
RiDeo, -riſi, -riſum, to laugh.	ViEο, -vi, -tum, to hoop.
SēDeo, ſedi, ſeſſum, to ſit. So Cir-	VōVeο, -i, vōtum, to vow.
	URgeo, -ſi, -ſum, to force,

The Third Conjugation in IRE makes the Preterperfect in IVI, the Supine in ITUM. As,

Audīo. Audire. Audivi. Auditum.

I. All Verbs of this Conjugation end in IO, except, Eo, to go, and its Compounds; Queo, to be able; Ad-ab-co-contrā-ex-in-inter-intro-ob-per-præ-pro-præter-red-sub-trans-Eo; all which are formed as Eo; but Amblo, to ſurround, in all Tenſes, as, Audio.

II. All Verbs in IO make IRE, except theſe in ARE.

Allēvio, -as, to diſſeſcem.	Calcio, -as, to ſhoo.
Amplio, -as, to enlarge.	Crūcio, -as, to torment.
Aſcio, -as, to hew.	Centūrio, -as, to divide by Hund.
Bāſio, -as, to buſh.	Concilio, -as, to conciliate, or unite.
Brevio, -as, to ſhorten.	Decūrio, -as, to divide by Ten.
	Emācio,

Emācio, -as, <i>to emaciate, or make lean.</i>	Propicio, <i>to pacify.</i>
Fūcio, -as, <i>to sweat.</i>	Rādio, -as, <i>to glitter.</i>
Frīor, -aris, <i>to be idle.</i>	Sācio, -as, <i>to satiate, to glut.</i>
Frio, -as, <i>to crumble.</i>	Saucio, -as, <i>to wound.</i>
Fūrio, -as, <i>to enrage.</i>	Sācio, -as, <i>to associate, to match.</i>
Gilicio, -as, <i>to congeal.</i>	Somnio, -as, <i>to dream.</i>
Hio, -as, <i>to gape.</i>	Spūrio, -as, <i>to rave.</i>
Infīor, -aris, <i>to deny.</i>	Strio, -as, <i>to chamber, to channel.</i>
Initio, -as, <i>to initiate or enter.</i>	Suāvio, <i>to kiss.</i>
Līnio, -as, <i>to tear.</i>	Succenturio, -as, <i>to recruit, or fill up the Hundred.</i>
Luxūcio, -as, <i>to abound.</i>	Triplūdio, -as, <i>to trip.</i>
Nunciō, -as, <i>to report.</i>	Vārio, -as, <i>to vary, to change.</i>
Pio, -as, <i>to atone.</i>	Vitio, -as, <i>to vitiate, to spoil.</i>
Premior, <i>to reward.</i>	

III. These Verbs following (either in Imperfect, or Pluperfect, or both) do vary from the common Form.

AMICio, -ivi, -ui (amixi) -tum, <i>to cleave.</i>	Com-ra-pēri, pertum.
ASSENtior, -fus, <i>to assent.</i>	PōTior, -iris, (-ēris) -iri, -itus, <i>to obtain, or be possessed of.</i>
EXPERior, -tus, <i>to try.</i>	RAUCio, -si, -sum, <i>to wheedle.</i>
FARCio, -si, -tum, <i>to stuff, cram; C. Con-dis-re-fercio, -si, -tum.</i>	SILio, -ii, -ui, -tum, <i>to leap; C. Dis-De-ex-im-re-sub-trans-silio, -si, -ul fultum; But Ab-pro-silui, N. S.</i>
PERio, N. P. percussi, -sum, <i>strike.</i>	SANCio, (civi) circum, -xi, -ctum, <i>to confirm.</i>
FULcio, -si, -tum, <i>to prep.</i>	SARCio, -si, -tum, <i>to patch, to mend.</i>
GESTio, -ivi, N. S. <i>to express joy, or desire by gesture.</i>	SENCio, -si, -tum, <i>to think.</i>
HAURio, -si, -tum, <i>to draw dry.</i>	SEPēLio, -ivi, sepultum, <i>to bury.</i>
MēTior, mensūs, <i>to measure.</i>	SEPIO, -si, -tum, <i>to fence in.</i>
OPPERior, -tus, <i>to wait.</i>	SINGULTio, -ivi, -um, <i>to sob.</i>
ORDior, ortus, <i>to begin.</i>	VēNeo, -ivi, -um, <i>to be sold.</i>
ORior, -ēris (-iris) -iri, ortus, ori-turus, <i>to arise.</i>	VēNio, -i, -tum, <i>to come.</i>
PARio, -ēre, pēpēci, partum, C. A-o-pērio, pēruī, pertum: But	VINCio, -xi, -ctum, <i>to bind.</i>

IV. Verbs in URIO (derived from Participles in URUS, and signifying a desire or purpose of doing something, as Coenaturio, [from Coenaturus] *to long for a Supper*; Dormiturio, *to gape for sleep*; Empūrio, *to have a mind to buy, &c.*) have no

Pretterperfect, and therefore no **Dupine**; **E**xcept, **E**furio, *to be hungry*; **N**upturio, *to wife for a Husband*; **P**arturio, *to cry out for a Midwife*; **i**vi, N. S.

The Fourth Conjugation in FERE Choit, makes the **P**retterperfect in **I**, and the **Dupine** in **TUM** or **SUM**; **I**s, **REGO**, **REGERE**: **REXI**, **RECTUM**.
Fodio, **F**odere: **F**odi, **F**ossum.

I. The **P**retterperfect and **Dupine** of Choit Verbs (being so differently formed, as to contain all the Variety of the three long Conjugations in **are**, **ere** and **ire**; and being not reducible to any comprehensible rules.) are here represented in all their several Changes and Terminations.

II. This mark of character † call'd an Obelisk, signifies that a word is Obsolete or disused; but an * Asterisk is set before a Verb Neuter; and let it be noted, that whatever Compound Verb, Tense or Supine is omitted, it agrees with the Simple expressed.

- | | |
|--|---|
| Bo , Bi , - Tum . | De - FETISCOR , - fectus , <i>wearied</i> . |
| BiBo , - i , - itum , <i>to drink</i> . | * GLISCO , <i>to grow</i> , N. P. |
| * CUMBo , Cub , - ui , - itum , <i>ly down</i> . | * HISCO , <i>to gape</i> , N. P. |
| GLuBo , - i , - itū , glupsi , - tum , <i>to sley</i> . | * IRA - scor , - tus , <i>to be angry</i> . |
| * LāBOR , lapius , <i>to slide, to slip</i> . | NANCISCOR , nactus , <i>to get</i> . |
| LAMBo , - i , <i>to lick</i> , N. S. | NA scor , - tus , nasciturus , <i>to be born</i> . |
| * NūBo , nup , - si , - tum , <i>be married</i> . | NO - sco , - vi , - tum , <i>to know</i> ; So ig - inter - præ - nōvi , - tum ; But Ag - cog - recog - nītum . |
| SCāBo , - i , <i>to scratch</i> , N. S. | OBLI - viscor , - tus , <i>to forget</i> . |
| SCRīBo , scrip , - si , - tum , <i>to write</i> . | PAC - iscor , - tus , <i>to bargain</i> . |
| Co , - Ci , - Ccum . | PA - sco , - vi , - itum , <i>to feed</i> . So De - pasco , <i>to graze</i> . But Com - dis - pesc - ui , - itum . |
| Dico , Di , - xi , - itum , <i>to say</i> . | PO SCo , pōposci , <i>to demand</i> , N. S. |
| Dūco , Du , - xi , - itum , <i>to lead</i> . | Præ - fici scor , - fectus , <i>to go forth</i> . |
| ICo , - i , - tum , <i>to strike</i> . | * QUIE - sco , - vi , - tum , <i>to rest</i> . |
| * PARco , Par , - si , - sum , <i>peperci</i> ,
patciturum , <i>to spare, to forbear</i> . | SCI - sco , - vi , - tum , <i>to decree</i> . |
| VINco , Vic , - i , - tum , <i>to conquer</i> . | * SUE - sco , - vi , - tum , <i>to be wont</i> . |
| Sco , - Vi , - Tum . | To these Verbs in SCO belong In-
choatives |
| ADIPISCOR , Adeptus , <i>to get</i> . | |
| Com MINISCOR , - mentus , <i>devises</i> . | |
| * EXPER - giscor , - rectus , <i>to awake</i> . | |
| * FATISCo , <i>to chape, gape</i> , N. P. | |

choatives or Inceptives, which signify the beginning of some gradual change, As *Lapidesco*, to begin to petrify, or turn into a Stone. * *Ditelco*, to begin to grow rich, from *lapis*, dives.

* *Ardesco*, to begin to be hot from *Ardeo*. None of which Verbs do form any Preterperfect, only these from Verbs do borrow one from their Primitives; as * *Resipisco*, *resipui*, to repent, from *Sapio*, to be wise.

Do, Di, Sum.

* *Cado*, -sum, *Cecidi*, to fall: C. *In-ac-re-cido*, -di, -csum; But *Ac-cu-de-ex-cido*, *ecidi*, N. S.

* *Cædo*, -sum, *Cecidi*, to cut: C. *At, Oc-cido*, -cidi, -csum, to kill.

Cedo, -cæ-si, -sum, to depart.

Ac-in-fucCENdo, -di, -sum, to kindle, burn, from † *Cando*.

CLAUDO, (or *Clûdo*), -si, -sum, to shut: C. *At, Concludo*.

CUDO, -si, -sum, to shape.

DIVI, -do, -isi, -ifum, to divide. From *DO*, the only short Verb in

IRE, do arise all these Compounds in Ære short; as, *Ab-ad-can-cre-da-in-per-pra-trans-ven-do*, -di, -di, -ditum; But *Ab-scendo*, -di, to hide.

EDo, -i, -sum, to eat.

De-af-FEN-do, -di, -sum, from † *fendo*.

FIDo, -fusus, to trust to.

FINdo, -fidi, -sum, to cleave.

* *FREND*, -o, -i, -fressum, to grin:

FUNDo, -fû-di, -sum, to pour out.

LÆ-do, -si, -sum, to hurt. C. *Al-cal-il-li-do*, -si, -sum.

LUdo, -si, -sum, to play.

MAN-do, -di, -sum, to eat.

PAND, -o, -i, -passum, to spread.

PED, -o, -itum, -pēdi, to foist. C.

Oppē-do, -di, to affront.

PEN-do, -sum, -pēdi, to weigh; C. as, *dependi*.

PLAU-do, -si, -sum, to clap; C.

Ap-cem-ex-plau-plo-do, -si, -sum;

But *Dis-supplōdo*.

PRĒHEN-do, -di, -sum, to catch.

RA-do, -si, -sum, to shove.

RO-do, -si, -sum, to gnaw.

* *RUDO*, -i, to bray, N. S.

SCAN-do, -di, -sum, to climb; C.

A-de-cem-ex-scen-do, -di, -sum.

SCINDo, -di, -ssum, to cut.

SID, -o, -i, -sēdi, -sum, to sit.

* *STRID*, -o, -i, to creak, N. S.

TEN-do, -sum, -tum, *Tendū*, to

stretch; C. as, *Contendū*.

TRU-do, -si, -sum, to thrash.

TUN-do, -sum, -tum, *Tuchū*,

to knock; C. as, *Perchūdi*, -sum.

VA-do, -si, -sum, to go.

Go, Xi, -tum.

AGO, -egi, -actum, to do; C. as,

Exigo; But *Circum-per-ago*.

Cōgo, (for *conigo*), -cōegi, -actum.

Dē-go, -gi, and *prodigo*, -egi, N.

S. But *Amēgo*, to doubt, N.P.

AN-go, -xi, to vex, chide, N.S.

CIN-go, -xi, -tum, to gird.

CLAN-go, -xi, to sound, N.S.

FI-go, -xi, -xum, (-tum,) to fasten.

FIN-go, -xi, -fistum, to sign. *As-*

cem-in-fligo, -xi, -tum, (from

† *fligo*,) to as-in-flit.

FRAngo, -tum, -frēgi, to break;

C. *Can-de-af-in-per-fringo*.

FRU-go, -xi, -xum, (-tum,) to fry.

FUN-gor, -tum, to perform.

H 2

JUN-go

JUN-go,-xi,-ctum, to join.

LĒ-go,-gi,-ctum, to read; So

Al-per-pra-re-sub-trans-lĕgo;

But Cel-de-e-se-lĕgo; And Di-

intet-neg-lĕgo,-lexi.

LIN-go,-xi,-ctum, to lick.

MER-go,-fi,-sum, to dip.

MIN-go,-xi,-mictum, to piss.

MUN-go,-xi,-ctum, to cleanse.

NIN-go,-xi,-ctum, to snow, N. S.

†PAN-go,-ctum, Pēpĭgi, bargain.

PAN-go,-xi,-(pegi,) pactum, to

fasten; So Circum-de-ex-re-sp-

pan-go,-xi,-(pegi;) But Com-

m-pingo, pegi.

PIN-go,-xi,-pictum, to paint.

PLAN-go,-xi,-ctum, to mourn.

PUN-go,-(xi,) pūpūgi, punctum,

to prick; C. Com-re-pūpūgi. But

Dis-ex-punxi.

RĒ-go,-xi,-ctum, to rule; C. Ar-

di-e-per-rĕgo. But As-con-ex-in-

re-sur-go,-rexī.

SPAR-go,-fi,-sum, to scatter; C.

A-con-di-in-spergo,-fi,-sum.

STRIN-go,-xi,-strictū, to strain.

Sū-go,-xi,-ctum, to suck.

TAngo,-ctum, tēlĕgi, to touch.

C. At, Con-tingo,-tĕgi,-tactum.

Tĕ-go,-xi,-ctum, to cover.

TER-go,-fi,-sum, to wipe.

TIN-go,-xi,-ctum, to stain.

VERGo, to over, to turn, N. P.

VN-go,-xi,-ctum, to ansint.

Ho,-Xi,-ctum

TRI-ho,-xi,-ctum, to draw.

Vĕ-ho,-xi,-ctum, to carry.

Lo,-Ui,-ctum.

AL-o,-ui,-ctum,-tum, to feed.

Ex-pra-CEL-lo,-ui,-sum, to sum-

pass, Rec-cello-cūli,-culsum, to

strike, Recello, to recell, N. P. At-

tecell-o,-ui, N. S.

CōL-o,-ui,-cultum, to dress. So

Ex-in-re-cōlo, But At-cōlo, N.

S. And Oc-culo,-ui,-tum, to hide.

Con-sul-o,-ui,-tum, to consult.

FAL-lo,-sum, Fefelli, to abate. C.

Re-fel-lo,-ligo reprove, N. S.

MōL-o,-ui,-ctum, to grind.

PELlo, pēpūli, pulsūm, to drive.

C. ar, Compūli, to compel.

PSAL-lo,-li, to sing, or play, N. S.

SAL-lo,-li,-sum, to salt.

TOLlo, Sustūli, Sublātum, raise.

C. Extuli; But Attollo, N. P.

VEL-lo,-li,-vul-fi,-sum, to pluck.

VōL-o,-ui, to will, desire, N. S. C.

Mā-nō-lo,-ui, N. S.

Mo,-Ui,-ctum.

CōM-o,-fi,-tum, to comb.

Dēm-o,-fi,-tum, to take away.

EMo,-ēmi,-tum, to buy. C. ar

Redīmo, to redeem; But Cō-

mo, to buy up.

* FRēm-o,-ui,-ctum, to rage, roar.

Gēm-o,-ui,-ctum, to groan.

PRēm-o, pressūm, to press. C.

ar, Opprimo, to oppress.

PRōM-o,-fi,-tum, to draw out.

SūM-o,-fi,-tum, to take.

* TRēm-o,-ui, to tremble, N. S.

VōM-o,-ui,-ctum, to vomit.

No,-Vi,-tum.

CāN-o,-tum, Cēcini, to sing. C.

at, Concino, cīnui, centum.

CERNō, (crē-vi,-tum,) to see. C.

at, Dis-crē-vi,-tum, to discern.

GIGNō, gēn-ui,-ctum, to beget.

LINō, (linīvi, linī, livi, from linī-

o,) Lēvi, (from leo,) litum, to

dawn.

PōNo, pōsui, -itum, *to put.*
 Si-no, -vi, -tum, *to permit.*
 SPERNo, spē-vi, -tum, *to scorn.*
 STERNo, strā-vi, -tum, *to straw.*
 TEM-no, -fi, -tum, *to sleight.*
 Po, -Pfi, -Tum.

CARP-o, -fi, -tum, *to carp, crop.* C.
as, Dacarp-o, -fi, -tum.
 RēPo, -fi, -tum, *to creep.*
 RUMPo, rup-i, -tum, *to break.*
 SCALP-o, or SCULP-o, -fi, -tum,
to scrape, scratch, carve or grave.
 SERP-o, -fi, -tum, *to crawl.*
 STRēP-o, -ui, -itum, *to bustle.*

Quo, -Qui, -Tum.
 CōQUo, coxi, coctum, *to bake boil.*
 LINQUo, liqui, (lictum,) *to leave.*
 C. *De-re-lictum, to forsake.*
 LIQUOR, *to melt, wash, N.P.*
 LōQUOR, locutus, *to speak.*
 SEQUOR, secutus, *to follow.*

Ro, -Vi, -Tum.
 CUR-ro, -sum, Cūcurri, *to run* So
Præcūcurri; But Circum-dis-
per-re-suc-curri; And Ac-con-
de-ex-pro-cucurri, and curri.
 FēRo, rūli, lātum, *to bear.*

QUÆ-ro, -sivi, -situm, *to ask.* C.
as, Acqui-ro, -sivi, -itum, to get.
 QUē-ror, -stus, *to complain.*
 SēRo, -vi, -satum, *to plant, to sow.*
 C. *as, Insitum, to grass.*

Sēr-o, -ui, -tum, *to set in order,*
as Flowers in a gar-den-land.
 TēRo, tri-vi, -tum, *to wear out.*
 Vēr-ro, -fi, -sum, *to brush, sweep.*
 URo, uf-fi, -tum, *to burn.*
 So, -Sivi, -itum.

ARCESS-o, -ivi, -itum, *to go call.*
 Capello, fa-la-cess-o, -ivi, -i, -itum.
 INCESS-o, -i, *to walk, N.S.*

DEPS-o, -ui, -itum, *to knead.*
 PINS-o, -ui, -itum, pistum, *to bake.*
 VIS-o, -i, -sum, *to visit.*
 To, -Ti, -Tum.

Am-cum-PLē-ctor, -xus, *embrace.*
 FLE-cto, -xi, -xum, *to bend.*
 MēTo, mess-ui, -um, *to mow.*
 MITTo, mi-fi, -ssum, *to send.*
 Ni-tor, (-sus,) -xus, *to strive.*
 NE-cto, -xui, (-i,) -xum, *to knit.*
 PE-cto, -xui, (-i,) -xum, *to comb.*
 PLE-cto, -xui, (-i,) -xum, *to strike.*
 Pē-to, -ivi, -itum, *to ask.*
 SISTo, stiti, stātum, *to set up.* C. *as,*
Re-sistum, to resist; But Aff-ab-
stiti, N.S.

REVER-tor, -sus, *to return.*
 STERT-o, -ui, *to snort, N.S.*
 VER-ro, -ti, -sum, *to turn.*
 UTOR, ūsus, *to use.*
 Vo, -Vi, -Tum.

LIVo, N.P. *See Luo, to wash.*
 SOLV-o, -i, solutum, *to untie.*
 VOLV-o, -i, volutum, *to roll.*
 VI-vo, -xi, -ctum, *to live.*
 Xo, -Ui, -Um.

NEX-o, -ui, -um, *to knit.*
 TEX-o, -ui, -tum, *to weave.*
 O Pure, or, after a Vowel.
 At Verbs in IO, and IOR.

CIP-io, -tum, cēpi, *to take.* C. *as,*
Con-cipio, cēpi, -tum.
 CūP-io, -ivi, -itum, *to covet.*
 FIC-io, -tum, fēci, *to make.* C.
with a Preposition, it changes, as,
Afficio, fec-i, -tum, to affect.
But with a Noun, Verb, or Ad-
verb it changes not; as, Com-
pendi-calc-satis-facio.
 FōD-io, -i, fossum, *to dig.*
 FūG-io, -i, -itum, *to fly.*

GRADIOR, *gressus to go.*JAC-io, -tum, jēci, *to cast.* C. *as,**Ad-jicio, -jēci, -tum.**Al-il-pel-Licio, -lexi, -lectum, from † Lacio, to entice; But E-**lic-io, -ui, -itum, to draw out.*MOR-ior, -tuus, *to die.*PAR-io, -tum, pēpēri, *to bring forth.* See the C. in IRE.QUATTO, qual-fi, -sum, *to shake.* C. *as, Can-cutio, -cussi, -cussum.*RAP-io, -ui, -tum, *to raven, ravish.* C. *as, Erip-io, -ui, -reptum.*SIP-io, (-ivi, -ui, *to taste, smell.* C. *De-re-sip-io, -ui, N.S.*

Uo, (and Uor, -) -Ui, -Utum.

ACU-o, -i, -ūtum, *to whet.*ARGU-o, -i, -ūtum, *to argue.*EXU-o, -i, -ūtum, *to put off.*FLU-o, -xi, -xum, *to flow.*GRU-o, -i, N.S. *cry as a Crane.*IMBU-o, -i, -ūtum, *to embrew.*INDU-o, -i, -ūtum, *to put on.*LUo, (the same as Lavo, -āre, -ē-re) lui, luitum, *to wash.* C. *as,*Polluo, pollūtum, *to pollute.*MINU-o, -i, -ūtum, *to minish.*† NUo, *to nod.* C. *Ab-an-in-re-nu-o, -i, N.S.*PLU-o, (-vi, -i, -ūtum, *to rain.*RU-o, -i, -ūtum, *to rush.* C. *as, Di-rūtum, to throw down.*SPU-o, -ui, -ūtum, *to spew, spit.*STRU-o, -xi, -ctum, *to build.*SU-o, -i, -ūtum, *to saw or stick.*TRIBU-o, -i, -ūtum, *to give.*

OF VERBS DEFECTIVE.

I. A Verb defective is imperfect in Mood, Tense, or Person.

AIO, *I say, ais, ait, aiunt.*AEBAm, *as, ar, mus, tis, nt.*ASTI, *astis, have said.*AIAS, *at, mus, nt, may say.*AI, *say thou. Aiens, saying.*APAG-e, -ite, *away, be gone.*AV-e, -to-ete, -ēbis, -ēre, *be merry.*AUSIm, -s, -t, -nt, *I durst.*CED-o, (for cedito,) -ite, *give, lend, reach hither.*COEP-i, *I began, -eram, -erim, -ero, -isse, perfect in these Tenses.*DU-is, -int, *for dedēr-is, -int.*EXPLICIT, *is unfolds, ends.*FAX-im, -o, (for faciam, fecēro,) -is, -it, -int, *would or will do it.*FOREM, *for fuerem, See p. 32.*INFIT, *it begins. So Desir, it fails, ceases, desir-ēt, -at.*INQUAM, *I say, (inquio,) -is, -it, -imus, -itis, -unt, inquebat, -nt. Inqui-es, -et, -ent, will say, inquisti, hast said, inquit, may say, inqu-e, -ito, say thou, in-**quiens, saying.*MEMINI, *I remember, memento, -te, remember thou, ye; the rest as, Copi.*ODI, *I do, have hated, as, corpi.*OV-at, -ans, *be triumphs.*QUÆS-o, -ūmus, *I, we pray.*SALVE, *God keep you, as ave.*SIE-m, -s, -t, -nt, *for Sim.*VALE, *farewell, as ave.*

Note,

*Nite, that Datis, to be given; to know, makes nite Sci, bis Sci
Fari, to speak, have lost their to in the Imperative.
present; Dor, For; and Scio,*

*Cæpi', aveo, memini, quaeso', odi, salve', ovar, inquam.
Aio, siem, faxim, duit, explicat, infit, & ausim.
Cedo', apage', & forem'; à seio sci fuge, nec lege dor, for.*

OF VERBS IMPERSONAL.

II. A Verb Impersonal is commonly read in the third person singular only, and without any Nominative expressly before it; as, Vivitur exiguo melius, It is best living on a little.

Since whatever is done, must proceed from some Doer, 'tis inconsistent with the Notion of any Verb to be Impersonal. The Nominative either suppress'd or disguis'd, gave occasion for this distinction, which in nature has no foundation. The reasons for omitting the Nominative are, 1. When 'tis included in the very Notation of the Verb. As, *Pugnatur ab Anglis, (i. e. pugna.)* The English do fight, or a Fight is fought by them. *Studetur Oxoni, (i. e. Studium à studio.)* *Vivitur ingenio, (i. e. vita.)* So *Ningit, (it snows,)* includes *Nix*. *Pluit, (it rains.)* *Pluvia, (it thunders.)* *tonat, &c.* 2. When 'tis imply'd in the signification of the Verb. As, *Dicunt, (i. e. homines.)* They say. *Fertur, (i. e. rumor, fama.)* 'Tis reported, or the story goes. 3. When 'tis obvious enough from the Scope of the Sentence. As, — *Non bene ripa creditur* — *Ving. (i. e. urman, grac.)* 'Tis not good trusting to the Bank, or the Flock is not safely trusted there. 4. When it lurks in the shape of an Infinite Verb, a Phrase or whole Sentence. As, *Pelle suum, (i. e. propria voluntas)* est cuique, There's an inclination peculiar to every one. *Ingenus artes didicisti (i. e. ingeniarum artium disciplina)* amolite mores, To be ingenuously bred (or ingenious Education) doth civilize Men's behaviour.

III. The sign of such Verbs in the Latin is IT in the English, and the most usual of them, are these following.

Accidit, it happens.

Cæpit, it began.

Conducit, it avails.

Confert, it serves.

Constat, it's evident.

Contingit, it befalls.

Convénit, it suits.

Dæcet, it becomes.

Dedæcet, it misbecomes.

Displicet, it displeases.

Dôlet, it grieves.

Est, it is.

Evenit, it comes to pass.

Expedit, it's expedient.

Interest, it concerns.

Juvat, it delights.

Libet, it pleases.

Licet, it's lawfull.

Liquet, it's clear.

Miseret, it makes pitifull.

Nöcet, it hurts.

Obest, it hinders.

Oportet,

Oporet, it behooves.

Paret, it appears.

Poenitet, it makes sorrowful.

Piget, it wears.

Placet, it pleases.

Poteft, it may, can.

Præftat, it's better,

Prodeft, it's profitable.

Püdet, it makes aſham'd.

Reſert, it imports.

Reſtat, it remains.

Sölet, it's went.

Sufficit, it ſuffices.

Tædet, it makes weary.

Văcar, there is leiſure.

Besides theſe, many other Verbs of the Paſſive, as well as Active form, have no Nominative of a Noun expreſſy before them. (As, *Bibitur, curritur*, &c. *â me, te, vobis, illis*, &c. *â e. Vinum bibitur, curſus curritur*, I, thou, ye, they do drink, run, &c. Or, the Wine is drunk, the Race is run by me, &c.) The farther conſideration of which belongs to the Syntax, this at preſent may ſuffice to ſhew what is meant by an Imperſonal Verb, and which of them are commonly ſo accounted.

CHAP. IX.

OF A PARTICIPLE.

I. A Participle is a word derived from a Verb, declined like an Adjective, and ſignifying (with difference of time) as a Verb.

Tis ſo call'd, becauſe it takes part of a Verb, and part of an Adverb, for it implies Perſon, Motion, and Time all at once, and by its inflection is capable (like any common Adjective) of being join'd to a Noun, or of ſupplying its place.

II. Participles are of four ſorts, Preſent, Preter, Future in RUS, Future in DUS.

Participles by their ſignification are twofold, Active or Paſſive, by their Tense threefold, Preſent, Preter, and Future, by their Termination ſeventfold, in *Ans, Ens, Tus, Sus, Xus, Rus, Dus*. From all which Accidents of Participles variously complicated, does ariſe the diviſion of them into no more than four kinds.

III. The Participle Preſent, ends in *ANS* or *ENS*, and its English commonly in *ING*, as, *Amans, Loving; Monens, Warning*.

Obſerve firſt, That *ING* is (in Participles of a Latin Original, and of the Gallick Mode) chang'd into *ANT* or *ENT*, as, *Radiant, Brilliant, Abſorbent, Luminous*, &c. with many more ready to be naturaliz'd. 2. That *ING* is the Termination of a Verbal Subſtantive, as well as of a Participle. As, *Monitis*, (or the) warning, *Monitis*, of ſome perſon warning, one ſignifying the Agent

or doer, the other the Action done by him ; which difference, as it is not hard, so 'tis necessary to be discern'd.

3. Gerunds (being a peculiar sort of Verbal Substantives) are in their oblique Cases render'd like Verbals in *NO*, as also are the Participles in *DUS*. Thus, *LECTIONE librorum* (*LEGENDO libris*, or *LEGENDIS libris*) *quidam doctiores, non omnes sapientiores sunt* : By reading (of) Books, some are made more Learned, not all more Wise.

IV. All Preter-participles (but four, *Fixus fasten'd*, *Flexus bent*, *plexus woven*, *mortuus dead*,) Do end in *TUS* or *SUS* ; and the English usually in *D. T.* or *N.* *Es, Auditus having been heard*, *Tactus having been felt*, *Visus having been seen*.

The English Preter-participle (by contractions, changes of Vowels, and new formations from the Latin) has so far departed from the old terminations *ED* and *EN*, (see Pag. 36. N. 1. 2. 3.) as scarce to be reduc'd to any Analogy. So *Heard* is made *heard*, *Cleaved cleft* or *clown*, *Known know'n*, *Worked work'd* or *wrought*, *Digged dug*, *Hanged hang*, *Stricken struck*, &c. Besides those of Latin derivation, as *Impraisé, Profrizet*, &c. So that *D. T. N.* are now no certain marks of this Participle ; but the signs *HAVE* and *AM* do in every Verb certainly show it. As *I have written*, *I am tired*.

V. The Future in *RUS* imports the purpose or probability of doing somewhat hereafter. *Es, Lecturus, one that has a mind (or is about) to read* ; *Pransurus, one going to dinner* ; *Moriturus, one like (or ready) to die*.

VI. The Future in *DUS* signifies the necessity or possibility of something to be done ; or the certainty of something now a-doing. *Es, Deus est adorandus, God is to be worshipped* ; *Liber est legendus, the Book is to be read* ; *In libris legendis assiduus, diligent in reading Books*.

1. The English Tongue (for want of formed Participles) renders the two Latin Futures by a Paraphrase, only the Participle in *DUS* (when it implies capacity or possibility) may be express'd by Verbals (in *BL*) of Latin or French descent ; such as, *Adorabl, Amabl, Approachabl, Desirabl, Despicabl, Faisabl, Penetrabl*, with many others of like Analogy answering to *Amandus, Amabilis*, &c. But when the Future in *DUS* is joyn'd to a Noun in an oblique Case, 'tis English'd by a Verbal in *ING*, *us, sola felicitatis acquirenda ratio in amplectenda virtute sita est* ; the only means of obtaining happiness is plac'd in embracing Virtue.

2. The Active Preter-participle is in the Latin form'd only from a few Deponents; but in English from all Actives, which (for want of Latin Deponents) is render'd elegantly by the Preter-passive. As, Having sealed his will he died: *Testamento obsignato* (or *cum testamento obsignasset*) *expiravit*: i. e. The will having been sealed, or when he had seal'd it. Otherwise by the Preter-deponent, as, *Hac locutus abijt*, having said this he departed; and sometimes by the Active present, as, *Adveniens offendi filiam collocatam*, *Ter.* Being come I found my Daughter married. Also observe, that this Preter-participle is sometimes both Active and Passive, for which consult the Dictionary.

VII. From the Theme of a Verb is form'd the Participle-present; and from that, the Future in DUS: As, Am-o-ans-andus, Mon-eo-ens-endus, Aud-io-iens-iendus, Reg-o-ens-endus; and from the Supine of a Verb are form'd the Preter-participle, and the Future in RUS: As, Ama-tu-tus-turus.

1. Verbs in O having the Supines do form the Participle-Present and Future in RUS. Passives in OR have the Preter and Future in DUS form'd from their Actives. Verbs in OR of an Active, Neuter, or of a middle signification, have some three, others four Participles.

2. These Futures are form'd from obsolete Supines. *Agnitum-Fruitum-Futu-Luitum-Meritum-Nescitum-Oritum-Osum-Paritum-Somatum-RUS.*

CHAP. X.

OF AN ADVERB.

I **A**N Adverb is an undeclinable word join'd to a Verb, Participle, Adjective, and sometimes to another Adverb to denote either the manner, place, or time of being, doing or suffering. As, *Qui ubique est, nusquam est*; *He that is every where, is no where.* *Sat cito, si sat bene*; *soon enough, if well enough.*

1. Besides the differences of time, person, and mood, which (over and above the principal signification) are involv'd in the very figure and inflexion of a Verb, there are many other circumstances of Being, Action and Passion, which are more nicely express'd by the Adverb; but may be as well express'd by an Adjective or Substantive. As *Velociter* *Hora Hora fugit*, *Time flies more swift than the Wind.* That is, *Velociter*

velacius, quam velociffimè, or maximè cum velocitate; more swiftly, v e
y swiftly, or with the greatest swiftness.

2. The greatest part of English Adverbs are known by ending in
U, and distinguishable from Adjectives of like termination, because
Adverbs are not joyn'd to Substantives. As, a holy Man lives holy.
(or à holy life;) *Vir pius piè* (or, *vitam piam*) *vivit*. The Latine Ad-
verbs are made of Nouns, Pronouns, Adnouns and Prepositions of va-
rious endings, but for the most part reducible to these; *è, à, ab, in,*
in, tèr, tui: As, *sane* truly, *subito*, suddenly, *cautius* more safely, *sensim*
gradually, *virum* (Man by Man, or) singly, *solum* only, *sapienter* wisely,
animus heartily.

II. **Adverbs** are either **Modal**, **Local**, or **Temporal**.
A Modal Adverb expresses the manner of being, doing,
or suffering; *Absolutely*, or *Comparatively*.

1. *Absolutely*; by

1. **Certainty**. *Nè Verily*, *Certè* truly, *Indubiè* un-
doubtedly.

2. **Contingence**. *Fortè* happily, *Forfan perhaps*, *For-
tuito* by chance.

3. **Negation**. *Non*, *Haud* not, *Nequāquam* in no wise.

4. **Natural Powers, or Habits**. *Wisely*, *liberally*,
justly:

5. **Sensible impressions**. As, *Brightly*, *Nastily*, *Bitter-
ly*, *Loudly*, *Smoothly*.

6. **Passions of the Soul**. *Merrily*, *joyfully*; as, *IO*,
HA, *HE*. *Wondringly*, as *En*, *Ecce*, *Papæ*, *O*, *Proh*. *Lo-
vingly*, as *Euge*, *Sodes*, *Amabó*. *Scornfully*, as *Hui*, *Hem*,
Vah, *Phuy*. *Hatefully*, as *Apæge*, *Væ*. *Sorrowfully*, as *Eheu*,
Hei, *Ah*. Which Adverbs (expressing sudden passions) are
also usually call'd Interjections.

2. *Comparatively*; by

1. **Excess**. *Valdè* very, *Magnoperè* exceedingly, *Ni-
mis* too much, *Magis* more, *Maximè* most, *Durius* more
hard, *Mollissimè* most softly.

2. **Defect**. *Ferè*, *Fermè* almost, *Propè* well-nigh, *Pa-
rum* little, *Minus* less, *Minimè* least of all.

3. **Likeness, or Equality**. *Sic*, *Ità*, *so*; *Idem* in like
manner; *Paritèr* alike; *Quasi*, *veluti*, as it were; *Tan-
quam* as.

4. **Unlikeness, or Inequality.** *Aliter otherwise; Diversimodè differently; Longè secus far otherwise.*

Local Adverbs do denote,

1. **Presence in a place, answering to the Question, UBI WHERE?** *As Hic here, Ibi there, Alibi elsewhere, Ubique every-where, Nullibi no-where, Suprà above, Infrà below, Intus within, Foràs without; Or to the question, QUICUM WITH WHOM? As, Unà together, Simul at once, Scorsim apart, Separatim severally.*

2. **Motion from a place; UNDE WHENCE,** *Hinc hence, Illinc thence, Aliundè otherwhence.*

3. **Motion towards a place; QUORSUM WHITHERWARDS?** *Horsum hitherward, Illorsum Thitherward, Aliorsum otherward, Quoquoversum toward every side, Sursum upward, Deorsum downward, Dextrorsum, sinisterorsum, toward the right, left.*

4. **The way to a place; QUÀ WHEREAWAY?** *Hàc this, Illàc that, Alià (scil. via) another way.*

5. **The term or end of Motion; QUÒ WHITHER?** *Hùc hisher, Illùc thisher, Aliò other-whither, Hucusq; hactenus hitherto, or to this place.*

Temporal Adverbs denote,

1. **Being in time; QUANDO WHEN?** *Either the Present; As Nunc now, Hodie to day; The Past, as Heri yesterday, Antè before, Dudum long since, Olim heretofore, Nudiuf-certius, quartus three, four days ago, Abhinc some time ago. The Future, As Cras to morrow, Nondum not yet, Post after, Olim hereafter, Abhinc (sometimes) henceforward.*

2. **Duration or Continuance; QUAMDIU HOW LONG?** *Diù a long while, Tardè slowly, Citè quickly, Breviter shortly, Adhuc, hactenus hitherto, or to this time.*

3. **Frequency or Repetition, 'QUOTIES HOW OFTEN?** *Sæpè often, Aliquando sometimes, Rarè seldom, Indies daily, Quotannis yearly, invicem by turns, Alternatim*

nam alternately, Semel once, Bis twice, Ter thrice, Decies ten times, Centies a hundred times.

III. Adverbs deriv'd from compar'd Adjectives do commonly form the same degrees of comparison; as,

Durè or duritèr. Duriùs. Durissimè.
Hardly. more Hardly. most Hardly.

Benè. Meliùs. Optimè. Multùm. Valdè. Magis. Maximè.
Well. Better. Best. Muchly. Greatly. More. Mostly.
Malè. Pejùs. Pessimè. Parùm. Minùs. Minimè.
Evilly or Ill. Worse. Worst. Little. Less. Least.

A more compleat Enumeration, as well as a more exact disposition of Adverbs, the Learner may find in the Royal Vocabulary; this may suffice to show in general, the Nature of them, and of what use they are in Language.

CHAP. XI.

OF A PREPOSITION.

I. **A** Preposition is an undeclinable word set before other words to compound them, and particularly before Nouns to govern them, and thereby to signify the Production, Portion or Situation of things; as, *Præcox ingenium per sæpe deficit ante senectutem*, *Hasty wit often fails before old age.*

In the Production of things, Prepositions denote the,

1. Efficient, *BY*, A, AB, PER.
2. Matter, *OF*, E, EX, DE, *sometimes a Gen. Case.*
3. Instrument, *WITH*, Cum, or *Abl. Case only.*
4. Idea or Pattern, *ACCORDING TO*, Secundum, PRO.
5. Effect or Subject, *ABOUT*, Circa, CIRCUM. *OF or CONCERNING*, DE, SUPRA.

6. End,

6. **End, FOR, OB, Propter, DE, PRÆ, PRO, or a Dative Case.**

In Motion, Prepositions denote the

1. **Initial Term or Beginning, FROM, A, AB. OUT OF, E, EX.**
2. **Progress or Continuation, Direct, TOWARDS, Versus, OVERTHWART or A-CROSS, TRANS. THRO, PER. Oblique, BESIDE, PRÆTER. ROUND-ABOUT, CIRCUM, Am- or Ambi-. ASIDE, Se-.**
3. **Final Term or End, TO, AD. INTO, IN.**
4. **Stopping short, BEHITHER, Cis, Citra.**
5. **Overgoing, BEYOND, Ultra.**
6. **Return, BACK, Re- retro.**

In Situation or local Relation, Prepositions denote,

1. **Presence, AT, Apud, AD. IN Possession, Penes IN, IN, or an Abl. Case only. WITHIN, Intra.**
 2. **Nearness, BEFORE, Coram. NIGH, Prope, Juxta. IN VIEW, Palam.**
 3. **Distance, FAR OFF, Procul AB. WITHOUT, Extra.**
 4. **Interposition, BETWEEN, INTER.**
 5. **Opposition, AGAINST, CONTRA.**
 6. **Immersion, UP to, Tenus.**
 7. **Order, BEFORE, ANTE. AFTER, Pone, POST. ABOVE, Supra. BENEATH, Infra. UPON, SUPER. UNDER, SUB, SUBTER.**
 8. **Society or Concomitance, WITH, Cum, Com-, Con-**
 9. **Solitude, WITHOUT, Absque, sine. Privily, Clam.**
- Am (or Ambi,) Di, Dis, Re, Se, Con, are only us'd in Composition. Those in Capitals compound and govern; the rest govern only, but when any Preposition has no case following, it becomes an Adverb.*

Thus much to show the use of a Preposition: Its construction and more distinct signification, see in the Syntax, and in the Royal Vocabulary.

C H A P. XII.

OF A CONJUNCTION.

I. A Conjunction is an undeclinable word, so joining Sentences together, as thereby to show the relation of one Action to another.

1. A Sentence necessarily consists of a Noun and Verb, either express'd or imply'd; two or more Sentences connected by proper Conjunctions make a coherent Discourse.

2. Sentences are join'd either by single or double Conjunctions. The Conjunction in the former Sentence is Prepositive, in the latter Subjunctive. But observe, That the order of Sentences is often inverted, and Conjunctions not always express'd; as, *Man had never died, had he not sinn'd*: That is, IF Man had not sinn'd, THEN he had never died.

II. The relation of one Sentence to another in Consistence, is threefold, Consistence, Dependence or Repugnance.

The Consistence of Actions with each other is express'd by Conjunctions.

1. Copulatives, *And, Also, Both, So-as; Ac, Atque, Et, Que, Quoque, Adeo-ut.*

2. Concessives, *Altho', albeit; Etsi, Etiamfi, Quamquam, Quamvis, Licet; At least, Saltem.*

The Dependence of one Action on another, is express'd by,

1. Causals, *For, Nam, namque, enim, etenim; Because, Quia, quod, quando, quoniam.*

2. Conditionals, *If, Si, sin; So that, Dum, modò.*

3. Illatives, *Therefore, Ergo, igitur, itaque; Then, Tum.*

The Repugnance of Actions is express'd by,

1. Disjunctives, *Either, or; Aut, vel, ve, seu, sive; Neither, Nec, neque.*

2. Exceptives, *But, except, unless, yet; At, ast, autem, sed, verò, ni, nisi, quin, quam, tamen, attamen.*

Besides

Besides those undeclined Particles usually number'd among Conjunctions, there are several Adverbs and Prepositions, and Pronouns also, which are commonly used (tho' not so commonly observ'd) in the Connexion of Sentences. Of the same sort may those words be accounted, which serve for transitions between Periods, Paragraphs or larger Portions of continued Discourses; the due choice and right applying of all which connexive Particles contributes to the Beauty and Perspicuity, as well as to the Strength and Solidity of a Discourse; and is therefore of no small concernment in the Art of Speaking.

ADVERTISEMENT.

Thus far of the use and properties of Words consider'd *separately*, and according to their Arrangement into eight *Classes*; for into so few Sorts is that which makes so great a noise in the World, and fills so many heavy Volumes, reduc'd. To make those *Etymological Notions* intelligible to a very young Learner, will not be difficult to the skill of a prudent and patient Instructor, who knows by obvious and familiar Applications to sport with the tender Capacity of a Child, and by instructions from *sensible Idea's* to lead him on to *Abstractions*. Some glimmering Perception of the use and difference of Words appears even in Infancy itself, and the very speedy Attainment not onely of the Names of things, but of the various *Modes* of 'em too, is an argument of so early, as well as easie Proficiency of a Child in *Natural Logic* and *Grammar*, as evinces the possibility of a Progress no less quick in the Artificial, for neither doth the wild-sprung Violet of the Wood differ so much in kind, as in Cultivation, from that which Perfumes the Borders of a Garden. The most natural method of Teaching a Child to speak, is (in two words) by PRATING and POINTING; by this address to the Eye and Ear both at once, is the little Vocabulary of Infants form'd; and in one years space alone after breeding of Teeth is there proportionably a greater number of Things and Words collected, than perhaps in three whole years after the speaking of them. If it be consider'd how an Infant learns from its Nurse, the reason of the Diversity will be obvious; nor will the method be difficult, whereby the Sounds of Letters, Syllables, or entire Words, and the several Sorts, Uses and Properties of them may be as easily distinguish'd, as an Apple from an Oyster. These are the *First Rudiments* and *Ground-work* of Grammar; which being well laid, the *Syntax* or *constructive part* will be so divertive, that both Learner and Instructor too, will be equally delighted with the Facility of the Superstructure.

SYNTAX.

CHAP. I.

Of the Structure of a Sentence.

Syntax (or Construction) is the regular Connexion of Words in the Form of a Sentence.

II. A Sentence is a comprehension of three words at least, whereby some Sentiment or Thought of the mind is express'd; As, *Mendacium est abominandum. A lye is abominable.*

III. The first word (or term) in a grammatical Sentence, is call'd the Nominative (or Subject) denoting the name of some thing. The third is the Adjunct (Attribute or Predicate) declaring the nature of it. The second or middle Term is the Verb, (or Copulative,) which connects the two extremes, by affirming one of the other.

1. The Nominative or Subject of a Sentence, may be one word or more; and so either a Noun or infinite Verb, (which is *Nomen verbi*;) or any other words besides, serving to show what thing is meant by us.

2. The Adjunct or Attribute may also be one word or more; a Noun Substantive, Adjective, Verb infinite, or several words together, which may serve to declare the Nature, Property, or any Circumstance belonging to the Nominative or Subject of the Sentence.

3. The Copulative in a Sentence is always the Verb *SUM* express'd or imply'd in some other Verb.

4. To these three principal terms in a Sentence, many other words are added either by way of *Illustration*, *Explication*, or *Limitation*; wherefore some depend on the Subject, others on the Predicate, the rest on the Copulative: By means of which a Sentence sometimes falls into

formous bulk, and becomes in its structure somewhat intricate, and consequently obscure in its meaning; defects to be avoided by all that would attain to perfection in any language.

Of the principal Varieties in the Structure of a Sentence.

1. The Construction of Noun with Noun. *Nobilitas (vera) est (atque unica) Virtus*: *Virtue is (the true and only) Nobility*. Here observe that the *Subject*, *Predicate* and *Copulative* are in Latine very often, and in English, not seldom, put out of the natural and grammatical order; and that, either to comply with the measures of Verse, or to avoid an unpleasing cadence in Prose; which Trajections the Learner must be taught to reduce, by ranging each principal term with its dependents in their proper places: *As, Virtus est vera atque unica Nobilitas*.

2. Noun with Adnoun, that is, Substantive with Adjective, Pronoun or Participle. *As, Ars (est) longa; Vita (est) brevis*. The way to Learning is long, to death is short.

3. Adjective with Adjective: *as, Difficilia qua pulchra; or Pulchra (sunt) Difficilia*: Things excellent are difficult. *Amara salubria*: Bitters are wholesome. In this Construction, the Adjectives either take on them the nature of Substantives; or else *esse, negativum* or *verbum* is understood, which causes the Adjective to be Neuter.

4. Infinitive with Adjective. *As, Summis negatum stare diu*, that is, *Statio diuturna negatur summis*: Things lofty quickly tumble down. *Velle summi cuique est, or voluntas est cuique propria*: Every man in his Humour.

5. Infinitive with Infinitive. *As, Nesci egrotare est, vivere sepe mori*; that is, *Nativitas est aegritudo, vitaeque mors quotidiana*: Our Birth is a Disease, and Life but a continual Dying. In this, and the former example it appears, That the infinitive is a verbal Noun invariable, and (like any other Noun) may be the Nominative before, or the Accusative after the Verb.

6. Phrase with Phrase. *As, Ingenuas didicisse fideliter artes (or Ingeniarum artium fideles disciplina) evellit mores*: Good breeding mends all Manners.

Of the Involution of many Sentences in One.

1. An Oration consisting of never so many words, is but one Sentence in grammatical Construction, when the whole composition depends but on one Verb. See an example of this *Involution* in one Column, and the *Evolution* in the other.

* God infinitely glorious, * the Creator of all things, * visible and * invisible, * both * from the first beginning of time, * till the Consummation of all things, * in an admi-

God, who 1 is infinitely glorious, did 2 create all things, as well those which 3 are seen, as those which 4 are not seen; and he most wisely by a power which cannot 5 be resisted, and
rable

able order, * and by an irresistible power * most wisely GOVERN the world, * containing the whole Fabrick of Heaven and Earth, * with all Creatures existing therein, * for the manifestation of his own glory, * and for accomplishing the happiness of Mankind.

in an order which 6 is to be admired, doth GOVERN the world, wherein is 7 contained the Fabrick of Heaven and Earth, together with all creatures that do 8 exist in it, that he might thereby 9 manifest his Glory, and 10 accomplish the happiness of men ever since time 11 began, until all things shall 12 be consummated.

2. By converting the Verbal Substantives and Participials in one example into Verbs in the other, and by inserting Relatives and other annexive Particles in their proper places, one Sentence is resolv'd into many, the Sense continuing still the same under so great a difference in the Composure. The reason of which well consider'd, will be to the Learner no small help in discerning the variety of Sciles in English, as well as Latin Writers.

3. When a Sentence is encumber'd with many words importing great variety of Circumstances, wherein the young Learner (as in a Labyrinth) is like to lose himself, this Verse may serve as a Clue to guide him.

1. *Quis*, 2. *Quid*, 3. *Ubi*, 4. *Quibus auxiliis*, 5. *Cur*, 6. *Quomodo*, 7. *Quando*.

1. Who, 2. What, 3. Where, 7. When, 5. Why, 4. Wherewith, 6. How, 1. Cause, 2. Act, 3. Place, 7. Time, 5. End, 4. Means, and 6. Manner show.

Let that of *Virgil* be an Example.

Ille Sichæum

Impius ante aras, atque auri cæcus amore,
Clam ferro incautum superat.

Where the Cause or Agent WHO, is *Ille impius*. WHAT, or the Act done, *Superat Sichæum*. The End WHY, *Amore auri*. The Manner HOW, *Incautum*, *Clam*. The Means WHEREWITH, *Ferro*. The Place WHERE, *Ante aras*.

IV. Words are join'd in Sentences two ways, either by Agreement or by Government.

V. Agreement is the Concord of two words in Number, Person, Case or Gender.

VI. Government is, when some word passing its signification upon another, doth thereby determine it to some certain Mood or Case.

VII. Words join'd by Agreement, are Nominative or Vocative with a finite Verb; the Accusative with a Verb infinite; Noun with Noun, and Noun with Pronoun. By Government, a Substantive, Adjective,

The, Verb, Participle, Gerund, Supine, Adverb and Preposition do make some Substantive following to depend upon them.

CHAP. II.

Of the Construction of Words in Concord.

I. CONCORD. The Nominative of a Noun (or whatever other word, one or more, supplies its place) must be of the same number and person with the Finite Verb, to which it answers by asking the question WHO or WHAT. *Es, Pingue solum laetat, sed juvat ipse labor. Even labour's pleasant, when it profits brings.*

1. How many ways the place of a Nominative may be supply'd, See Ch. 1. Nr. 3. 4. 5. 6. Only let it be farther observ'd, that this Nominative before Verbs of the second Person is turn'd into a Vocative. As, *Domine, exaudi nos. Adesdum, bene vir.* This is necessary to be noted in Nouns of the second Declension in *US* and *FUS*, of which the Vocative differs from the Nominative. See Pag. 10. Nr. 1. and Pag. 12. Nr. 2. 3.

2. The Number and Person of a Noun are best discover'd by prefixing some personal Pronoun thereunto. As, I, WE. 2. THOU, YOU, YE. 3. HE, SHE, IT, THAT, THIS, THEY, THESE, THOSE. But observe, that YOU in civil speaking is singular as well as plural, a complement unknown to the Latin Tongue.

3. Sometimes Nouns (by inflexion) singular, do (by reason of a plural Signification) admit a Verb Plural. As, *Pars* (viro-*rum* *serinam*) *in frustra secant, or secat. Orator uterque eloquiis perit or perierunt.* Both constructions are allowable, one respecting the words, the other the Sense.

4. Two or more Nominatives singular all jointly answering to one Verb, are to be accounted Plural. As,

1. *Multi rogare, 2. rogata tenere, 3. retenta docere;*
Hac tria discipulum faciunt aequare magistrum.

Here are three things (1. Curiosity in making enquiries. 2. A memory retentive of things learn'd. 3. A readiness in communicating things known) which taken altogether (*faciunt*) do make the Scholar equal to his master.

3. If two or more Nominatives may answer to the Verb severally, it is then indifferent whether the Verb be Singular or Plural. As,

Patriam obruit (or obruerunt) olim

Gloria paucorum, & laudis ritulq; cupido.

The lust of Fame, and Pride but of a few

Unquiter Men our Country overthrow

4. If one Nominative be express'd and another (in an oblique Case) be imply'd, the Verb may (by the reason given *Nr. 3.*) be either Singular or Plural. As,

Remo cum fratre Quirinus

Jura dabat or dabant.

7. The Verb must be Finite. When therefore a Nominative seems to come before, or answer to an Infinitive: there is an *Ellipsis* of some Verb Finite; such as, *Est, Cupit, Silet, &c.* As *Omnis omnia bona dicere & laudare (cuperunt) fortunas meas.* *Sen Pius Aeneas (erat, quoniam) eripuisse sermo.* That is, *Pium Aeneas eripuisse sermo*, or *Pius Aeneas sermo eripuisse.*

II. CONCORD. A Verb infinitive hath always before it an Accusative of some Noun express'd or understood; As,

— *Diram qui contudit hydram,*
Comperit invidiam supremo fine domari.

He that of old the dreadful Dragon slew,
Found envy last and hardest to subdue.

1. The reason of this Construction is the same as that of Concord I. namely, That every Verb (importing some Action, Passion or Being) must have a Noun before it expressing that thing, to which doth belong the Action, Passion or Being signifi'd by the Verb, (See *Pag. 55.* in the Notes Num. II.) The Verb Finite has therefore the Nominative, and the Infinitive the Accusative Case before it. But when in the same Sentence both Verbs Finite and Infinitive respect the same Noun, the Accusative is for brevity omitted, and if there be an Adjective belonging to that Noun, it may accord either with the Case express'd, or understood. (*Ego*) *Malo dives esse, quam haberi*; or *Malo me divitem esse, quam haberi.* *Non licet nobis esse tam disertis,* or *Nos esse tam disertis non licet nobis.* *Non vacat exiguis rebus adesse Jovi,* or *Jovem exiguis rebus adesse non vacat (Jovi.)*

2. This Construction of the Accusative with the Infinitive is sometimes varied by interposing these connexive Particles, *Quod, ut, ne, quin,* &c. and turning the Infinitive into a Finite Verb. As, *Vides inimicos nostros cupere bellum,* or *Vides, quid inimici nostri bellum cupiant.* The latter is allowable, but the former more elegant; as being a neat way of comprising two Sentences in one. It may also be said, *Vides inimicos nostros bellum cupientes,* or *belli cupidos*; whereby it appears, that (*inimicos cupere* and *Inimicos cupidos*, or *cupientes*) are of the same import, and that the Accusative and Infinitive are join'd by Concord, as well

as the Nominative and Verb Finite, or the Substantive and Adjective.

III. CONCORD. An Adjective (whether it be a Noun, Pronoun, or Participle) must be of the same Case, Gender and Number with its Substantive; As,

Nullus in egregio corpore navuserat.

In shape so excellent no blemish was.

1. The place of an Adjective (in Latin as well as English) is usually before its Substantive; As, *Iniquissima pax iustissimo bello est anteferta.* But where-ever 'tis plac'd (either for the sake of poetical or oratorical Measures) the question WHO or WHAT made upon it, will readily discover its Substantive.

2. When MAN or THING is the Substantive in English, the Adjective often stands alone in Latin: As, *Impii imple loquuntur*: Wicked MEN speak wicked THINGS. And when a solitary Adjective is made Neuter, *Opus, verbum or negotium* (as the Sense requires) is understood. As, *Non est bonum (negotium) somnus de prandio*: Sleep after Dinner is a bad (business).

3. A Pronoun hath in all respects the same Construction as a common Adjective: the only difficulty to Learners is, when it becomes a Relative; For which see the Directions IV. Concord, Not. 1, 2, 3.

4. If one Adjective refers to two or more Substantives of different Genders, it may agree with the nearest of the least worthy, that is, Feminine; or the remotest of the most worthy Gender, that is, the Masculine. As, *Maritus & uxor est irata*, or *Maritus & uxor sunt irati*: at length, *Maritus est iratus, & uxor est irata*. The former being only compendious ways of speaking, which gave the first occasion to all figurative expressions in any Language.

5. An Adjective sometimes agrees with the name of a Thing imply'd, and not with the Substantive express'd. As, *Anser fata*, i. e. *semella*, A broody Goose. *Gens armata*, An armed Nation. At length, *Gens virorum, qui viri sunt* armati.

6. When an Infinitive or several words in one Phrase do express any thing after the manner of a Substantive, they are to be reputed as a Noun of the Neuter Gender; and if more than one of them, of the Plural Number. As, *Scire tuum nihil est, si sciat alter idem*: Your knowledge nothing is, if others know the same.

IV. CONCORD. A Relative agrees with its repeated Antecedent in Case, Gender and Number; As,

Rara quidem est virtus, quam non fortuna gubernat,

Quaeq; manet stabili, cum fugit illa, pede.

Virtue, which Fortune rules not, seldom's found;

And which, when that departs, doth stand its ground.

1. A Relative is nothing but an Adjective standing between two cases of the same Substantive; the one express'd in the foregoing, the other understood in the following Sentence. The Case express'd is call'd the *Antecedent* to the Relative, because (in the natural order of the words) it goes before it; the case understood may be call'd the *Subsequent* to it, because it immediately follows it, or is suppos'd so to do; and in all regular constructions this *subsequent Case* of the Noun is the Substantive to the Relative; as,

Felix, quem faciunt aliena pericula cautum.

That is, The MAN is happy, which MAN others dangers do make wary. *Felix (est ille VIR,) quem (VIRUM) aliena pericula cautum faciunt.*

2. The *Antecedent* to the Relative is found two ways, first, by its place, which most commonly is (and in all Languages ought to be) immediately before the Relative; as,

—— *Populi 1. quos (populos) despicit Arctos,*

Felices (sunt) erroris suo 2. quos (populos) illa timoribus

Maximus (timor) haud urget, (scil.) leti metus.

secondly, 'Tis discover'd by the Meaning and Scope of the Sentence, Thus in the example above, 1. *Quos* has the Antecedent immediately before it; 2. *Quos* finds its Antecedent by asking the Question, *Who they are, whom the fear of Death does not disturb?* Answer. *The People of the North.*

3. There is a Construction less usual, wherein the Antecedent is omitted in the former Sentence, and express'd in the latter; as, *Urbum quam statuo, vestra (urbs) est.* The City which I build is your (City.) *Populo ut placerent, (fabulae) quas fecisset fabulas.* And observe, that (in the natural order) the Sentence containing the Relative is always the latter, and in grammatical Construction ought so to be plac'd, or at least, between the parts of the Antecedent Sentence. As, *Populo ut placerent fabulae, quas fecisset; or, Ut fabulae, quas fecisset, populo placerent.*

4. Sometimes the Relative (in imitation of the Greek Construction) accords with a Substantive in the subsequent Sentence, of a different Gender or Number from its true Antecedent. As, *hunc bonis necessariis obbenevolentia, qui est fortis amicitia; for Quia benevolentia est, &c.*

5. The Relative doth sometimes accord with a Noun imply'd in the Antecedent. As, *Daret ut catenis fatale monstrum, (scil. Cleopatram,) qua quercibus quarebat perire.*

6. The English Tongue (through haste or negligence) sometimes omits the Relative; As, *He is the worst of Villains who betrays the Man — he pretends to love.* But this omission the Latin allows not; As, *Nihilominus pessimus est, qui quem se amare simulat, prodit: At length tunc, Nihilominus pessimus est Nebulo, qui Nebulo illum virum quem virum se amare simulat, prodit.*

V. CONCORD. Two or more Substantives being names of the same thing, and having no casual sign between them, are join'd together in the same Case; as, *Deus*

Deus Creator mundi hominem divinæ naturæ fecit imaginem; *God the Creator of the world, made man an image of the divine Nature.*

1. This Concord is call'd *Apposition*, and some Verb or Participle understood may be the term of Connexion between Nouns joyn'd in this construction; as, *Pater meus* (existens) *vir amat me* (existentem) *puerum*: My Father (*being*) a Man loveth me (*being*) a Child. *Urbs* (dicta) *que dicitur Oxoniæ*. But if a casual Sign intervenes, the Noun following copules with it, as, The City of Oxford, *Urbs* (dicta de nomine) *Oxoniæ*.

Many Nouns thus joyn'd by *Apposition* are in construction with Verb or Adjective to be reputed as one, because they are all jointly the name but of one thing; and if they are of different Genders or Numbers, the Verb or Adjective may best accord with the most general or emphatical, as, *URBS* *Athena*, *artium & scientiarum celebre olim emporium*, *sub Turcarum imperatore insensibilisimo literarum hostis gemitus*, *barbarum diu passa est, postem præ cæteris omnibus gravissimam.*

OF THE CONCORD OF SENTENCES.

I. CONCORD. The Interrogative and Redditive (*that is, Question and Answer*) must be express'd in words of like construction; as, *Quest.* *Quarum rerum nulla est satiêtas?* *Resp.* (*Nulla est satiêtas*) *Divitiarum.*
What's that, wherof Men never have enough?
'Tis Men y, whether white or yellow stuff.

1. The use of this Concord is to regulate the Language of Dialogues or other alternate Discourses, wherein whatever precedes by way of *Question* or *Propositiu*, should (as to the Syntax) be imitated in the following *Answer* or *Replication*, which similitude of Construction in the correspondent parts of a discourse is at once attended with the double advantage both of Brevity and Perspicuity, in as much 'as no more need be express'd in the *Redditive*, than what (either by Affirmation, Negation or Explication) is necessary to satisfy the intent of the *Interrogative*, the rest (being common to both) may be omitted in the latter, as *Qu. Pernicies homini qua maxima?* *Resp.* *Solus homo alter* (*est homini maxima pernicies*.) *Quest.* What is the greatest mischief unto Man? *Ans.* (*The greatest mischief is another*) Man.

2. The Construction of the *Redditive* sometimes varies, when the question is made by the Adjective *Cujus*, -a, -um, or is affected with an *Ellipsis*; as, *Cujus* (for *Cujus*) *est sententia?* (*Est sententia*) *Ciceronis*, or *Ciceroniana*. *Cujus* *pecus?* (*Est pecus*) *Melibæi* or *Melibæarum*. The Adjective *Cujus* is most agreeably answer'd by a Possessive, if the Substantive

itive forms any, otherwise by its Genitive. *Quamvis* (nummi pretio) *nisi liberum?* (Emi) *salute* & (pretio) *pluris* (nummi.)

II. CONCORD. The Prepositive and Subjunctive (that is, two Sentences connected by Conjunctions copulative or disjunctive, or by any of these four, QUAM, NISI, PRÆTERQUAM, AN,) have the same cases of a Noun, and commonly the same Mood and Tense of a Verb. *Is, Non minor est virtus, quam querere, parva tueri.* The skill's all one, * To keep as get possession.

1. The structure of the Prepositive or leading Sentence, is (as it were) a model to the Subjunctive (whether one or more) depending upon it, and the uniformity of Sentences so connected, as it prevents a great deal of nauseous repetition, so it contributes very much to the Beauty and Perspicuity of the whole Composition: as, *Statuite nunc, utrum colamus vestris, negotiatoribus vestris, amicissimis atque antiquissimis sociis, & orare, & consulere malitis: an eis, quibus neque, propter iracundiam, fidem, neque propter infidelitatem honorem habere debeat, Cic. orat. pro Fontip. Tangere enim, & tangi, nisi corpus, nulla potest res. Lucret.*

2. When Conjunctions do connect various Cases there's an Ellipsis of some word, which being supply'd, the Construction will be regular. *Id, Vici* (in urbe) *Roma & Venetiis. Emi liberum centum &* (pretio) *pluris* (pecunie.)

3. Besides this use of Conjunctions in grammatical Concord, which is of great consequence in the forming of Style, there is a more noble effect of them in showing the Logical dependance of one Proposition upon another, and with respect to this latter consideration they were rang'd in that Method, Chap. 12. pag. 63. but how to apply them in the best manner to that purpose, the Learner (having attain'd to some ripeness of judgment) will quickly discern, by conversing with accurate Writers, and observing the Coherence of their discourses.

CHAP. III.

Of the Rules of Government.

THE Rules of Government do by four ways discover the case of the Substantive: 1. By its place before or after the Verb. 2. By its casual Sign. 3. By its Signification. 4. By its depending on some indeclinable word.

SECT. 1. Of the Noun's Place.

I. GENERAL RULE. The Substantive without any casual sign coming next before a Verb, and answering to the Question WHO or WHAT, must be the Nominative to that Verb: as,

Nox & amor vinumq; nihil moderabile suadent;

Illa pudor vacat, Liber amorq; metu.

Night, Lust, and Wine the worst advisers are;

No shame's i'th' first, in t'other two no fear.

1. This rule is but a Repetition of the first Concord, with the consideration of the Noun's place superadded. The place here intended is according to the natural order of the words, which is often chang'd to comply with artificial Measures in Prose or Verses, and to denote an Interrogative or Imperative sense of a Verb, or to express an Emphasis: as *Amas tu?* Lovest thou? *Amato ille*, Let him love. *Venit ad me quidam*, There came one to me. *Est liber meus*, It is my Book.

II. GENERAL RULE. The Substantive coming next after a Verb Transitive, without any casual sign, and answering the Question WHOM or WHAT, must be the Accusative Case; as,

Saucius ejurat pugnam gladiator, at idem

Immemor antiqui vulneris arma capit.

The wounded Swords-man does abjure the Wars,

Yet soon takes arms, not mindfull of his Scars.

1. When Verbs of Asking, Teaching and Arraying, have after them two Accusatives, one is govern'd of some word suppress'd: as, *Pecus Deum* (dare) veniam, Ask God (to give) pardon. *Duces te* (scire) litavisti. *Induo* (in) me calceos. *Celo* (to hide) has also this construction, but most of these Verbs may change one of these Cases for a Dative or Ablative: for which consult the Dictionary.

2. Passives of this signification are also said to retain one of these Accusatives, but 'tis by an Ellipsis. As, *Rogantur* (scire) *Sententiam*, they are ask'd (to give) their opinion. *Fruges alimentaque* (dare) *divis* *poscebatur* *humus*.

3. Such Verbs, as under an Active form have a Passive signification, admit an Accusative also by reason of a Preposition understood. Of this sort are those call'd Neuters (see Ch. 8. Rule 6. pag. 29.) signifying some Passion or Mutation in the Subject without any express relation to the Agent producing such an effect: as, *Candor* (quoad, secundum) *dentes*, *dolor* (quoad, secundum) *caput*. He is white about the Teeth, pain'd in his head. So also Participles and Adjectives Passive; as, *Laniata cervice*, *Ager pedes*.

4. As the asking of a Question casts the *Nominative* behind, so it sets the *Accusative* before the Verb; and to prevent mistakes, let it be remember'd, that all these words, *Quem, Qualem, Quantum, Quotum* and their Compounds, (whether us'd as *Interrogatives* or *Relatives*, whether in the *Accusative* or any other Case,) must always stand before the Verb: as, *Quem librum legis? Quas putas esse, non sunt ver'a nomina.*

5. An infinitive Verb may supply the place of an *Accusative* after a Verb, as well as of a *Nominative* before it: as, *Huicque mori* (i. e. *hunc mortem*) *maluit, quam turpiter vivere* (*turpem vitam*;) He chose to die honourably (or an honourable death,) rather than to live ignominiously (or an ignominious life.)

Four Exceptions to the second general Rule.

I. EXCEPTION. Verbs Substantives, SUM, FUI, FUISSE, FUISSIMUS, FUISSIMUSQUE, STO, SEDEO, CUBO; and all Passives have a *Nominative* Case after them: as, *Omnia Pontus erat, decrant quoque littora ponto.*
The Sea was all, nor had that Sea a Shore.

1. This construction (appertaining to the Concord of Noun with Noun or Noun with Adnoun) was mention'd here only for greater caution among the Exceptions of the second general Rule, which Learners are apt to misunderstand. Let it therefore be remember'd, That not only *Nesters* and *Passives*, but any other Verb may have a *Nominative* after it if of a Substantive that stands in Apposition to the Case before it, or if an Adjective that agrees with it: As, *Serus in caelum redeas*: May you go late to Heaven. *Quicquid mirabere,* Pones levius*: What'ever you love, you will unwilling leave.

II. EXCEPTION. These nine Verbs, (*Satago, to manage; Misereor, to pity; OBLIVISCOR, to forget; RECORDOR, REMINISCOR, MEMINI, to remember; Interest, Refert, it concerns,*) have after them a *Genitive*: as, *Rerum tuarum satage, mind your own business; Misere're, precor, natiq; patrisq; Some pity pray, on Son and Father take. Non me meminisse pigebit amici,* Dum memor ipse mei, I may my self, but can't my Friend forget. Interest reipublice juventutem esse institutam, It concerns the Government, that youth be well bred.*

1. The *Genitive* of any Noun do's generally depend upon some other Noun express'd or understood, however 'tis never govern'd of a Verb: Thus, *Rerum satagit, is agit satis rerum. Misereor (gratia or causa) tui*: I am troubld for your sake. *Interest (res) omnium*: 'Tis the concernment

of all. *Reminiscor* (verba) *historia*: I remember (the words of) the history. And indeed these four, *OBLIVISCOR*, *RECORDOR*, *REMINISCOR*, *MEMINI*, are usually read with an Accusative express'd, as, *Amisisti hinc obliviscere Graecos*, * *Noster eris*. *Verba parentis Es vocem, vultumque recorder*. *Numerus meminui, si verba tenerem*, &c.

2. These two, *INTEREST*, *REFERT*, have a peculiar construction with (*Mea, Tua, Sua, Nostra, Vestra, Cuius*) Ablatives Feminine of Pronouns Possessive: as, *Tua refert teipsum nosse*: It concerns you to know your self. *Id mea nil refert*: That nothing concerns me. Where *causa* or *gratia* is understood, signifying on my behalf or account.

III. EXCEPTION. Certain Verbs signifying *Profit, Pleasure, Help, Favour, Trust, Commanding, Obeying, or their Contraries*, will have next after them, a *Dative Case*: as, *Bonus nocet, qui malis parcat*: He hurts the good, who spares the bad. *Imperat, aut servit collecta pecunia cuique*, Each man of's Hoard, is either Slave or Lord.

1. Because it may not (to a young Learner) be always obvious by a general signification to discern every Verb contain'd in the Exception foregoing, here follows an Alphabetical List of such as have a Dative immediately after them.

<i>Adūlor</i> , to flatter.	<i>Incommōdo</i> , to incommode.
<i>Adversor</i> , to oppose.	<i>Indignor</i> , to be angry.
<i>Ancillor</i> , to serve.	<i>Indulgeo</i> , to humour.
<i>Assenti-o</i> , or, to	<i>Innitor</i> to rely on.
<i>Assentor</i> , sooth.	<i>Insidiōr</i> , to entrap.
<i>Auxilior</i> , to aid.	<i>Invidēo</i> , to envy.
<i>Bene</i> , - <i>Male</i> , - to help, hurt.	<i>Iraſcor</i> , to be angry.
<i>Satis-Facio</i> , to satisfy.	<i>Mando</i> , to entrust.
<i>Blandior</i> , to caress.	<i>Mēdeor</i> , to heal.
<i>Commōdo</i> , to ſet, furnish.	<i>Morigēror</i> , to humour.
<i>Confido</i> , to trust.	<i>Nōceo</i> , to hurt.
<i>Condōno</i> , to pardon.	<i>Nūbo</i> , to marry.
<i>Crēdo</i> , to believe.	<i>Obēdio</i> , to obey.
<i>Diffido</i> , to distrust.	<i>Obſequor</i> , to humour.
<i>Displiceo</i> , to displease.	<i>Obtempēro</i> , to obey.
<i>Fāmūlor</i> , to serve.	<i>Obſto</i> , to withstand.
<i>Fāveo</i> , to favour.	<i>Obſum</i> , to hinder.
<i>Ignosco</i> , to pardon.	<i>Occurro</i> to prevent.
<i>Impēro</i> , to command.	<i>Officio</i> , to hurt.

Opitior, <i>to help.</i>	Refrāgor, <i>to contradict.</i>
Palpor, <i>to paw.</i>	Repugno, <i>to oppose.</i>
Parco, <i>to obey.</i>	Resisto, <i>to resist.</i>
Patrocīnor, <i>to protect.</i>	Respondeo, <i>to answer.</i>
Perſuādeo, <i>to convince.</i>	Suādeo, <i>to persuade.</i>
Plaudo, <i>to cry up.</i>	Subvēnio, <i>to assist.</i>
Præcipio, <i>to command.</i>	Succurro, <i>to help.</i>
Proſicio, <i>to profit.</i>	Stūdeo, <i>to favour.</i>
Proſum, <i>to profit.</i>	Vāco, <i>to attend.</i>
Reclāmo, <i>to gainſay.</i>	Velifcor, <i>to purſue.</i>

2. Why theſe Verbs (being all Transitive) ſhould have a Dative Caſe immediately after them, is, becauſe an Accuſative is involv'd in the very Figure of the Verb, or elſe imply'd in its ſignification: Thus, *Auxilio* involves *Auxillam*; *Auxilio*, *Auxilium*; *Faveo*, *Favorem*; *Impero*, *Imperium*; and *Morigero* is *noxiū gerere*, &c. So *Nolo* implies *Vultum*; *Plaudo*, *munus*; *Obſta*, *ſtare ob viam*, &c. Hence it is that we ſay, *Ludere aliquem*, but *Nocere alicui*, for *nocere* includes *noxiū*, an Accuſative of its own Family, and anciently alſo admitted a Stranger; as, *Nocere neminem*. Plaut.

3. To the III. EXCEPTION belong Verbs compounded with *PRÆ*, *AD*, *CON*, *SUB*, *POST*, *OB*, *IN*, *INTER*, *SUPER*, and all the Compounds of *SUM*, (but *Poſſum*) which have uſually a Dative immediately after them: as, *Nihilus in orbe ſinus Bæjis præluceſcit æmulo*. But let not the young Reader depend on this as a ſafe direction for Verbs thus compounded admit of various Conſtruction, and therefore it will be ever beſt to conſult the Dictionary, till obſervation ſhall make them more familiar. See a Liſt of theſe Compounds, Chap. 5. Sect. 3. of the Prepoſition.

IV. EXCEPTION. VERBS of *Wanting*, and *POTIOR* (*to obtain or enjoy*) *STO*, *CONSTO* (*to coſt*) have immediately after them an Ablative (by reaſon of a Prepoſition,) or a Genitive (by reaſon of a Subſtantive underſtood;) but *FUNGOR*, (*to perform*), *FRUOR*, (*to enjoy*), *GAUDEO*, (*to rejoice*), *UTOR*, (*to uſe*), *VESCOR*, (*to eat*), have an Ablative only: as, *Vela queror reditu*, *verba carere fide*. *OF Wind*, * *None in your Sails, all in your words I find*. *Fas omne abrupit*, & *auro* * *Vi potitur*: *He breaks all Law, and Gold by force obtains*. *Gaudet equis, canibuſq;* *puer, non factus ad artes*: *A boy not born to ſence or wit, Is but for Dogs or Horſes fit*. *Vir bonus utitur hoc mundo, non fruitur*, *A good man uſes, but enjoys not this world*.

1. *Fugor, Eror, Paor, Utar, Viscor*, were sometime read with an Accusative, till the signification of a Preposition intervening chang'd it into an Ablative, it being universally true, that this Case in all Constructions depends on some Preposition, tho' not always obvious to a Learner. As, to rejoyce IN, to make use OF, to feed ON, &c.

SECT. 2. *How to find the case of the Substantive by casual Signs or English Particles set before it.*

I. RULE. OF coming after a Noun, Adnoun, or Adverb is a Sign that the casual word following must be the Genitive Case: as, *Amor nummi est radix omnium malorum*: The love OF Money is the Root OF all Evils. *Memor esto brevis ævi*. Be mindfull OF your short life. *Saris eloquentiæ, Sapientiæ parum*: Enough OF Eloquence, little OF Wisdom.

1. The Genitive of a Substantive generally depends upon some other Substantive which is omitted, because imply'd in a Denominative of the same Original. So *Cupidus* (implies *cupiditate*) *auri*; *Partius* includes *pari*; and *Saris, Nunc, Tunc, &c.* are used substantively. So *Tully, Nunc ipsum*.

2. This Sign OF before a Genitive, denotes a great variety of circumstances or relations between it, and the word on which it depends, which will be of no small use to those of riper judgments to survey in the following Examples.

1. *Of the Part to the Whole, or whole to the Part.*
Cauda Leonis Homo crassi capitis.
2. *Of the Subject to the Accident, or Acc. to the Subject.*
Splendor Solis Puer optimæ Indolis.
3. *Of Efficient to Effect, or Effect to Efficient.*
Templum Solomonis, Creator mundi.
4. *Of End to Means, or Means to the End.*
Apparatus convivii, Mors crucis.
5. *Of Material to Materiate, or Materiate to Material.*
Crater argenti, Lapides templi.
6. *Of Object to the Act, or Act to the Object.*
Amor Dei, (sc. amati,) Oblectamenta oculorum.
7. *Offices political, or Relations Oeconomical.*
Rex Angliæ, Pater familiæ.
8. *Of Possessor to Possession, or Possession to Possessor.*
Pecus Melibæi, Pastor gregis.

9. Of

9. Of Time to Event, or Event to Time.

Tempus belli, Hora cœnæ, Luxus seculi, Noctis silentiū.

10. Of the Contents to the Continent, or Continent to Cont.

Pisces maris, Florum fasciculus.

In all which instances 'tis observable, that whatever the two Relatives be, which are join'd in this Grammatical construction, the Genitive has ever this property, to limit and determine the general or indefinite signification of that word, on which it depends.

3. This sign OF often lies hid in 'S at the end of a Substantive. As, *Man's nature*, or the nature OF *man*; *Women's attire*, or the attire OF *women*. And then it may be render'd in Latine, either by a Genitive of that Substantive, or, (if it forms any,) by it's Denominative agreeing with the Substantive foregoing. As, *Natura luminis* or *humana*; *Mundus mulierum* or *mulieris*.

The same is to be understood of these Pronouns *His*, *Her's*, *Their's*, *Our's*, *Your's*, *Whose*, standing for OF-*Him*-*Her*-*Their*-*You*-*Whom*: So, 1. *He*. 2. *She*. 3. *They*-lost 1. *His*. 2. *Her*. 3. *Their* book, is render'd, 1. *Illis* 2. *Illis* 3. *Illis* am-*fu*-*erunt* librum 1. 2. 3. *suum*. A thief stole 1. *His* 2. *Her* 3. *Their* book: *Fur surripuit librum* 1. 2. *Illius* 3. *Illorum*.

Where observe, that when OWN or SELF are added to Pronouns coming after a Verb, such Pronouns are call'd *Reflective* or *Reciprocal*, because they relate unto and repeat the Same person, that went before the Verb: and are to be render'd by SUUS *His*-*Her*-*Their*-OWN, and by SUI. SIBI. SE. *Him*-*Her*-SELF, or *Their*-SELVES. See Chap. 6. of a Pronoun. Note 3. pag. 23.

4. OF before a Noun signifying the matter (as *Crater Argenti*, Numb. 6.) is more usually express'd by *e*, *ex*, or *de* with an Ablative, As *Crater (factus) ex Argento*: or else by it's denominative agreeing with the former substantive, As, *Crater argenteus*; and in this manner may almost any genitive, that forms a denominative, be varied. As, *Candela lœmina*, *Splendor solaris*, *Amor divinus*, *Piscis marinus*, &c.

Three Exceptions about OF after a Noun.

I. EXCEPTION. OF (for *BT*) after *Adjectives* or *Participles* passively taken, is a Sign of a *Dative*: as, *Nulli flebilior occidit, quàm mihi*: OF none more, than *BT* me, did he lamented die. See III. EXC. to Rule IV. Sect. 2.

II. EXCEPTION. OF after *Adjectives* signifying *Plenty* or *Want*, and these particular words, *Opus*, *Ufus*, *Dignus*, with some others, is a sign of an *Ablative*: as, *Maxima quæq; domus servis est PLENA superbis*: OF haughty Slaves each great man's house is Full.

1. In

1. In this Construction the Prepositions *A, AB, DE*, do answer to the English *OF*, unless a Genitive be us'd, and then an Ablative is understood: as, *Scultorum* (de turbâ) *plena sunt omnia*. *Vacuum* (ab affectu) *ira*. *Integer* (in omnibus officiis) *vita*, *scelerisq;* (à labef) *parus*. Which diversity of structure is found both in Historians and Poets, as the Learner may in his reading observe, but for the sake of Beginners, here is added a List of those Words, which are most commonly follow'd by an Ablative, those mark'd (with *) do sometimes (after the Greek fashion) take after them a Genitive.

List of WORDS belonging to the II. EXCEPTION.

<i>Ægrôtus</i> , sick.	<i>Locuples</i> , full.
<i>Captus</i> , bereft.	<i>Mancus</i> , }
<i>Copiosus</i> , * full.	<i>Mutilus</i> , } defective.
<i>Cretus</i> , made.	<i>Natus</i> , born.
<i>Defectus</i> , destitute.	<i>Nudus</i> , naked.
<i>Destitutus</i> , forsaken.	<i>Opus</i> , need of.
<i>Dignus</i> , * worthy.	<i>Orbus</i> , depriv'd.
<i>Dives</i> , * rich.	<i>Ortus</i> , * descended.
<i>Editus</i> , born.	<i>Plenus</i> , full.
<i>Fœtus</i> , big.	<i>Refertus</i> , * full.
<i>Genitus</i> , begotten.	<i>Satur</i> , full.
<i>Inānis</i> , * empty.	<i>Spoliatus</i> , robbed.
<i>Indignus</i> , * unworthy.	<i>Superbus</i> , proud.
<i>Inops</i> , * void.	<i>Vacuum</i> , empty.
<i>Lætus</i> , glad.	<i>Viduus</i> , deprived.
<i>Liber</i> , void.	<i>Ufus</i> , need of.

III. EXCEPTION. *OF* coming between two Nouns, whereof the latter expresses some remarkable quality or property belonging to the former, is a sign that the latter may be put in the Ablative Case: as, *Puer bono ingenio* (*præditus*), or *boni ingenii*: *A Boy of a good Wit*. *Vir nullâ fide*, or *nullius fidēi*: *A man of no credit*.

Concerning *OF* after a Verb.

II. RULE. *OF* after a Verb is a sign of an Ablative with one of these Prepositions, *A, AB, ABS, E, EX, DE*, &c.

Se non putat ulla (Juv. Sat. 6.)
 Formosam, EX Anglâ nisi quæ mox Gallica facta est.
None thinks her self a pretty Wench,
Unless OF English she's made French.
 Mutato nomine DE te * Fabula narratur.
Change but the Name,
 * OF you they say the same.

1. Besides the various relations denoted by this Particle OF in the construction of the Genitive (Sect. 2. Rule 1.) it will be some direction in the choice of the Latine Preposition to observe its different significations in the Ablative, 1. It imports the matter of which any thing is made; as, *Vas è gemmâ. Simulacrum ex ære. Turris de molibus ulvæ.* 2. The Author or Efficient; as, *A Deo omnia*: All things are OF or FROM God. *Laudatur ab his, culpatur ab illis*: 'Tis prais'd OF or BY these, dislik'd BY them. 3. The Subject or Object; as, *Scriptis Cæsar de republicâ*: Tully wrote OF or CONCERNING Government. 4. Motion OF, FROM, or OUT-OF a place; as, *E flammis ereptus*: snatch'd from the Fire. *Ex urbe effugit*: He fled out of the City. *De suo dedit*: He gave of his own. 5. Privation; as, *On. re levatus*: Eas'd of his burthen. And in this last Acceptation, the Preposition is usually omitted.

Four Exceptions about OF after a Verb.

I. EXCEPTION. OF between the Verb IS (EST) and the Possessor, is a sign of a Genitive; as, *Insuperantis est (mor, proprium,) dicere non putâram*. 'Tis the way or manner of a Fool to say, I never thought on'r.

II. EXCEPTION. OF between a Verb of Valuing and a Noun of uncertain Value is a sign of a Genitive; as,

Parvi (pretii valere) penditur probitas.
Honesty is (rated at the value) of a small price.
Pluris opes nunc sunt, quàm prisca temporis annis.
Wealth now is of esteem much more,
 * Than it was in times of Töre.

III. EXCEPTION. OF between a Verb of Accusing or Absolving, and a Noun of the particular crime: or between a Verb of admonishing and a Noun of the thing forgotten, is a sign of a Genitive; as,
Accusatur, absolvitur (de, à crimine) furti.
He is accused, acquitted (of the crime) of Theft.

Res adversæ admovent homines (*de necessitate*) religionum.
Afflictions do remind Men (of the necessity) of Religion.

IV. EXCEPTION. OF after the English of these Verbs, Miseret, Pœnitet, Piger, Pudet, Tædet me; *Pities, repents, troubles, shames, tires me, is a sign of a Genitive; as,*

Quid tam dextro pede concipis, ut te
 Conatus non pœniteat, votique peracti.
*What have you wish'd or done with best intent,
 Of which you did not afterwards repent?*

1. The reason of the construction in all these four Exceptions is still the same, for the Genitive depends on some Substantive understood, as in the examples is express'd: But in these Impersonals, *Miseret, Pœnitet, &c.* there seems to be a Nominative (of like signification) imply'd. As, *Miseria tui me miseret*: The misery of you (afflicts me, or) makes me miserable. *Tædium vita me tædet*: The Tedioufness of life tires me. See Chap. 8. Numb. II. Pag. 55. *Of Verbs Impersonal.*

Of the Signs TO and FOR.

III. RULE. TO or FOR denoting the Relation of Convenience or Inconvenience between any two Terms is a Sign, that the latter may be a Dative; and if both Signs come together, a Double Dative; as,

Permittes ipsis expendere Numinibus, quid
 Conveniat nobis, rebusq; sit utile nostris.
*What's good FOR us, and FOR our bus'ness fit,
 Leave thou TO God, he best considers it.*
 Parva tibi exemplo est magni formica laboris.
*The little Emmet is to thee,
 * An instance great OF Industry.*

1. The III. EXC. to II. Gen. Rule. Sect. 1. and this III. Rule Sect. 2. do both belong to the construction of the Dative, but with this difference, That the aforesaid Exception (and the Appendix to it,) do direct to the Dative either by the Signification or Composition of the Verb. but this present Rule discovers it by Casual Signs: That admits a Dative after a Verb only; *Thou* after Verb, Substantive, or Adjective indifferently: In *that*, the Dative immediately follow'd the Verb; In *this*, an Accusative may, and commonly do's intervene.

2. The double Dative (answering these two signs conjunctly) usually depends upon some one of these Verbs, or of like Sense; as,
Verte, Habet, Tribuo, Puto, Sum, Do, Duceo, Relinquo.

we observe, that the Dative after FOR may be varied by PRO in the Ablative, as, *Hæc tibi pro præmio erit*: and TO, by AD, IN. As in the Exceptions following.

1. In such expressions, *Give me the Book, Tell us a Story, Fetch me my Knife.* The Sign TO, which is lost in the Transposition, recovers its place in the natural order of the Words, as, *Give the Book TO me, &c.*

Exceptions about TO.

I. EXCEPTION. TO or FOR after Substantives, Identives or Verbs denoting either Motion or any Tendency to it, is made by AD or IN, and an Accusative, importing the Term of such Motion; as,

Sit piger ad pœnas Princeps, ad præmia velox.

TO vengeance slow, prone TO Munificence;

Are Virtues which become the greatest Prince.

Impiger extremos currit mercator ad Indos

Per mare pauperiem fugiens, per saxa, per ignes.

TO th^e Indian Coast the busy Merchant hies,

And Poverty through Rocks, Fire, Water flies.

1. For some help to young Learners, here is a List of such Verbs and Adjectives, as belong to the former Exception: those mark'd * are made also with a Dative.

*Accingo, * to prepare.*

*Addo, * to add.*

*Adhæreo, * to stick.*

Adigo, to drive.

*Adjicio, * to add.*

*Affero, * to bring.*

*Appello, * to approach.*

*Applico, * to apply.*

Appropinquo, to approach.

*Attendo, * to listen.*

Attinet, it belongs.

Cogo, to drive.

*Compáro, * to provide.*

*Conduco, * to avail.*

*Conféro, * to conduce.*

Duco, to lead.

Excito, to excite.

Lucito, to urge.

Inclino, to bend.

Instigo, to egg.

*Intendo, * to bend.*

Invito, to invite.

Lacesso, to provoke.

Lôquor, to speak.

Páro, to prepare.

Pertinet, it belongs.

Propéro, to hasten.

Scribo, to write.

Spectat, it belongs.

Tollo, to lift.

Tendo, to bend.

Vénio, to come.

Vôco, to call.

Urgeo, to force.

With some others of the like Sense. M 2 AÇ

Accinctus, *ready*.
 Accommodatus, *fitted*.
 Alacris, *brisk*.
 Aptus, * *fit*.
 Attentus, *bent*.
 Commodus, * *convenient*.
 Comparatus, *provided*.
 Compositus, *disposed*.
 Expeditus, *ready*.
 Facilis, *inclined*.
 Factus, *made*.
 Festinus, *hastening*.
 Inclinatus, *bent*.
 Instruētus, *furnish'd*.

Natus, *born*.
 Ornatus, *equipp'd*.
 Paratus, * *ready*.
 Piger, *slow*.
 Præceps, *headlong*.
 Proclivis, * *forward*.
 Promptus, *ready*.
 Pronus, *forward*.
 Propensus, *addicted*.
 Tardus, *backward*.
 Vehemens, *earnest*.
 Velox, *swift*.
 Utilis, *useful*.

2. When the proper Name of a Town or City, or a first Supine, or their particular words, HOME, COUNTRY, are the term or end of Motion; the Preposition AD is usually omitted; as, *Eo Londinū, sperces emptum*: *meo RUS, DOMUM rediturus*; I go TO London, TO buy goods; being speedily to return TO the Country TO my Home.

Exceptions about FOR.

I. EXCEPTION. FOR coming between the Effect and the Cause or Reason of it, and answering to the Question WHY or WHEREFORE, is express'd either by one of the Prepositions, OB, PROPTER, DE, PRÆ, PRO, and a suitable Case, or by an Ablative only; as,

— Quemvis mediâ erue turbâ,
 Aut ob avaritiâ, aut miserâ ambitione laborat.
*Take where you will out of the Rabble wide,
 There's none but's sick FOR Avarice or Pride.*
 Summum crede nefas animam præferre pudori,
 Et propter vitam vivendi perdere causas.
*'Tis Hell in spite of Conscience life to chuse,
 And FOR Breath's sake the end of living lose.*

II. EXCEPTION. FOR importing Commutation, Compensation or Substitution is made by PRO and an Ablative; as,

Quam PRO me curam geris, hanc precor, (Optime)
 pro me

De-

Deponas; letumq; sinas PRO laude pacisci:
Non quicquam tantà PRO spe tentare recuso. *Virg.*
Taken at this cave FOR me (good Sir) I pray,
And suffer me FOR honour death to pay;
FOR so great hope I scruple no essay.

1. Commutation is the exchange of one thing FOR another, whether of Goods FOR Goods, or Money FOR Goods, or (which is the most unhappy Bargain) of Body and Soul FOR the Riches and Pleasures of this World. As, *Animam lucro, corpus auro vendebat.* 2. Compensation is a requital of some benefit perform'd, or loss sustain'd by another FOR our sake. As, *Omnes ut totum meritis PRO talibus annis * Exigat.*

1. Substitution is the putting one Person FOR another, to do or suffer something in his stead. As, *Conducibilis est nobis, utrum Commem pro populo mori, quam totam perire gentem.* In the two first Acceptations of FOR (and especially before Nouns of Price) PRO may, and commonly is omitted, but in the third it ought to be express'd.

2. These Adjectives, (FOR little, much, a small matter, a great deal, in much, half so much, double) are (after Verbs of valuing) render'd in Latine by *Vili, paulo, parvo, minimo, magno, nimio, dimidio, duplo* without the Preposition PRO, or Substantive PRETIO express'd. As, *Ille lithæcum velis, & magno mercentur Atrida. Constat parvo fames, magno subsidium.*

3. These Adjectives FOR how much, so much, thus much, more, less are render'd by *Quanti, tanti, huius, pluris, minoris*, the Substantive *Præti*, and an Ablative being understood. As, *Magis illa iuvatur, qua pluris emuntur. Putuit fortasse minoris * Piscator, quam piscis omni.* (See Exc. II. about OF after a Verb.) By the same Elliptical Construction are these Substantives, *Flocci, Nauti, Nilili, Pili, Asti, Terenci* put in the Genitive after Verbs, to express the low and contemptible price of any thing. As,

Non illum pili facio, qui me flocci aestimat.

A Far for him, that cares not a Farthing for me.

III. EXCEPTION. FOR before words of Time is made by AD, IN or PER; as,

Urbs antiqua ruit multos præclara per annos.

Famous FOR many years the ancient City fell.

The same (imposing the END) may be made by AD or IN; as,

Hæc est IN pœnas terra reperta meas.

FOR my Repentance was this Country found.

IV. EXCEPTION, FOR denoting the apportioning any common dividend, by particular shares, may be made by IN; as, *Quaternos denarios in singulas vini amphoras exegit: He demanded four pence FOR (or upon) each*

each Rundlet of Wine. Militibus pollicetur quaterna in singulos jugera: *He promises to the Souldiers four Acres (a man, each, apiece ;) FOR every one.*

Of the Signs IN, WITH, FROM, AT, ON, BY and THAN.

IV. RULE. IN, WITH, FROM, AT, ON, BY, and THAN after a Comparative, are Signs of an Ab-lative; as,

1. Egregio inperfos reprehendas (*in*) corpore nævos.
IN fairest skin some spots are to be seen.
2. Ploratur (*cum*) lacrymis amissa pecunia veris.
WITH truest Grief, lost Pelf lamented is.
3. Teneros animos aliena opprobria saepe
Absterrent (*a*) vitiis.
*FROM Vice oft-times the shame
Of others Crimes doth tender Minds reclaim.*
4. Ingenuo indignum est alienâ vivere (*de*) quadrâ.
*'Tis a misbecoming Sight,
A Gentleman turn'd Parasite.*
5. Vivitur (*cum*) exiguo meliùs.
Men best ON little live.
6. Fama malum, (*præ*) quo non aliud velocius ullum,
(*Præ*) Mobilitate viget, viresq; acquirit (*ab*) eundo.
*BY stirring brisk, and strong BY moving grows
Report, THAN which no mischief swifter goes.*

1. It has been before observ'd, that every Ablative (not excepting that call'd *Assidue*) is govern'd of some Preposition: which however is frequently omitted to the no small distress of the Learner, who being us'd to a Language, that Supplies the want of casual Terminations with various Signs, distinctly expressing the relations of Cause, Instrument, Manner, Preference, Concomitance, &c. must needs be puzzl'd with a Tongue which so much neglects them. It will therefore be expedient for Young Beginners to supply the absent Prepositions in what they read, and more especially in what they compose, as may be seen in the Examples above; untill by a competent Exercise in both, they may discern this difference of Structure in the English and Latin Tongues.

2. The omission of Prepositions is most usual, when an Ablative signifies the Instrument or Manner of doing; but when it denotes Concomitance, CUM must be express'd, unless it be employ'd in the foregoing word; as, *Uno graditur comitatus Abite.* The rest must be left to the observation of the ingenious Learner.

3. The

3. The Ablative Absolute is so call'd, because it has no Preposition prefix'd neither in Latine nor English; but there must be some Preposition understood to denote the relation between the Ablative and the preceding Word, else the Words can have no determinate Sense: Thus, *Se iudice, Nemo meus absolvatur*; i. e. *As*; No Criminal is acquitted even BY himself being Judge. *Claudite accepto nequisquam janua damus*, i. e. *à damis accepto*. AFTER a lock sustain'd, In vain the Door is chain'd. This Ablative is known by BEING, or some other Participle in ING, and the Preposition may be discover'd by the Scope of the whole Sentence.

I. EXCEPTION. *WITH* (for *AT*) after these Verbs of Anger, Irascor, Stomachor, Succenseo; is made by a Dative; for *TO* after Verbs of comparing, by *AD*, *CUM*, or a Dative onely; as, *Alicui irasci, stomachari, succensere*: *To be angry WITH, or AT any one*. *Ad eum comparatus nihil est*: *He is nothing compar'd TO him*. *Rem cum re comparare*: *To compare one thing WITH another*. *Catoni comparantur pauci*: *Few are compar'd to Cato*.

II. EXCEPTION. *FROM* after Verbs of Distance or Deprivation is sometimes made by a Dative; but more agreeably by *A*, *Ab*, *E*, *Ex*, *De*, as the sense requires; as, *Inimici mei mea mihi, non meipsum, ademunt*: *Not my self, but mine have mine Enemies taken FROM me*. *Paulum sepultæ inertie distat celata virtus*: *Little does concealed Virtue differ from buried Sloth*.

III. EXCEPTION. *AT* or *IN* before the proper Name of a Place, of the first or second Declension, and singular Number, is made by a Genitive, otherwise by an Ablative; as,

Romæ Tibur amo ventosus, Tibure Romam.

Et modò me Thebis animum, modò ponit Athenis.

At Rome I fickle Tibur love; at Tibur, Rome;

At Athens, then at Thebes in thought I make my home.

1. In the Construction of this Genitive, an Ablative is understood; as, in *Urbe Romæ*, *AT* or *IN* (the City OF) *Romæ*: which is also true of these common Names, *Domus*, *AT* Home; *Humi*, *ON* the Ground; *Belli*, *Militiæ*, *AT* the War; before which (*Latus*, *Facies*, *Arx*, &c.) may be understood. But in these expressions, *He was present AT the Business, Entertainment, Meeting, &c.* *AT* is made by a Dative; as, *Interfuit negotio, conviviis, concilio, &c.*

IV. EXCEPTION. ON or UPON are signs of a Dative after Verbs compounded with CON, IN, OB; as, *Conflavit mihi invidia*: He blew up Envy UPON me. *Tempus studiis impendit*: He lays out his time ON his Studies. *Palpum illis obtrudit*: He put a Trick upon them.

V. EXCEPTION. BY after Verbs Passives and their Participles is often (and especially among the Poets) made by a Dative; as,

Id vitium nulli per secula longa notatum.
That Fault BY none was for long Ages seen.

1. BY and OF are often us'd for each other; (See I. EXC. Rule I. Sect. 2.) and when they denote the Agent, may be made by PER; or A, Ab, which is most usual.

Some general Observations about Casual Particles.

1. By the transposing of Cases, the Signs TO and FOR are lost after the Verbs following.

<i>Allow</i> Men their failings.	<i>Lend</i> your Neighbour advice.
<i>Bid</i> a good Neighbour a good Morrow.	<i>Make</i> your self no Enemy.
<i>Bring</i> your Friend no ill News.	<i>Owe</i> no body any thing.
<i>Buy</i> your Daughter a Husband.	<i>Pardon</i> your self nothing.
<i>Deliver</i> my Friend a Letter.	<i>Pay</i> every one his own.
<i>Deny</i> a good Man nothing.	<i>Promise</i> your self no long Life.
<i>Do</i> no Man a Mischief.	<i>Restore</i> your Neighbour his Loan.
<i>Give</i> the Devil his due.	<i>Sell</i> no Man an ill Bargain.
<i>Grant</i> none a hasty Request.	<i>Send</i> the Poor your leavings.
<i>Fetch</i> a dead Man no Physick.	<i>Show</i> none an ugly trick.
<i>Forgive</i> an Enemy his Faults.	<i>Spare</i> your self no pains.
	<i>Tell</i> no Man a Lye.
	<i>Wish</i> all Men happiness.

In these and such like Transpositions, let the Cases be reduc'd, and the sign will appear; as, *Deny nothing TO a good Man.* *Fetch no Physick FOR a dead Man.* This observation belongs to Rule III. Note 3. pag. 19.

2. A Particle which seems as a casual Sign to a Noun, is sometimes as it were an *Appositive* or *Epithet* to the foregoing Verb; as,

Immortalis ne speres, monet annus, & cinis

Qua rapit hora diem.

Each day and hour throughout the changing Year
Bid thee to hope FOR (*expect*) nothing lasting here.

Of this sort are *Catch, pull, strike, wonder-AT*, &c. *Enquire, follow,*
let-AFTER, &c. *Long, look, send, stay, wait-FOR* any thing, &c.
Which are Verbs compounded at the wrong end (instead of *Forestay,*
fermaid, &c.) and were they always written as such, with a (-) *Hyphen*,
the usual mistakes of Learners might be prevented.

1. The casual sign sometimes lies at the end of a Sentence, and its
Case at the Beginning; as, (For) *what is Masey good FOR*, but (for)
lances and Fools (wacrewith, or with which) *to do mischief WITH*?
The place (to which) we come TO, *is worse than that*, (from which or
whence) *we came FROM*. This is indeed a vulgar way of speaking,
and yet (besides what may be observ'd in the *coarser Compositions* of less
accurate Writers,) even great *Masters of Sense and Style* too have with
good Judgment plac'd casual Particles in this manner. There are cer-
tainly some occasions, where they close a Sentence with an emphatical
elegance: but in general, 'tis a clogging sort of Construction, that lies
a stumbling Block in the Learner's way, and being unseasonably us'd
looks like a blemish in the fairest Composition.

Thus far of finding the Case of the Noun by English Signs, Construc-
tions extraordinary and unusual are left to the Learner's occasional ob-
servation, and the Aids of a Dictionary; there being in all Languages
five Forms of Speaking reconcilable to no Rule nor Reason, which
Chance at first introduc'd, and brutish Custom (a Nurse as blind as the
Mother) afterwards confirm'd, and which it may be thought some de-
gree of Learning to understand, but surely no great Wisdom to use or
imitate. Perspicuity is the greatest Elegance of Language, and the tru-
est Propriety what is most easily intelligible; if any are taken with
kiddles, there's Obscurity enough in things themselves to entertain the
harpest Curiosity; but as for *cramp Words* and *crooked Phrases*, (the meer
Lumber of Language) they are most proper to be lodg'd in empty Gar-
dens, which are not capable of better Furniture.

CHAP. IV.

*Of finding the Case of the Substantive by its
Signification alone.*

I. RULE. **A**LL words expressing the Measure of
Quantity in Miles, Yards, Feet, Inches, &c.
of the Duration of Time, in Years, Months, Days, Hours, &c.
N are

are (by reason of a Preposition understood) put in the Accusative Case; as,

Dic quibus in terris, & eris mihi magnus Apollo,

AD. Tres pateat cœli, spatium non amplius ulnas.

Tell where the Sky doth three Ells wide appear;

I'll take thee for a mighty Conjuror.

PER Tres aded incertos cœcâ caligine soles

Erramus pelago, totidem sine sidere noctes.

Three Days and Nights on Sea we driving spent,

Nor Sun, or Star were seen i'th' Firmament.

1. The question, *HOW long, broad, thick, far, wide, high, deep* any thing is? is answer'd by a Noun of measure in the Accusative govern'd by AD; as, *Arbor crassa* (AD) *tres digitos* (comparata:) A Tree thick (compar'd TO) three Inches. That is, the thickness of which is found by being apply'd or compar'd TO a measure of three Inches.

2. Sometimes this Accusative is turn'd into an Ablative, *A, AB* or *DE* being understood; as, *Digitus à morte remotis* * *Quatuor aut septem*: (FROM) four or seven Inches remov'd from Death. That is, numbering BY, or measuring FROM so many Inches. By an Ellipsis of an Accusative or Ablative, the term denoting the particular measure is sometime Genitive; as, *Areas longas* (AD MENSURAM) *pedum quinquagenum facito*: Make the Beds or Plats long (TO the MEASURE) of fifty Foot.

3. The question *HOW long* with respect to Time is answer'd by an Accusative depending upon AD, ANTE, PER, POST, CIRCITER, as the Sense requires; as, (ANTE) *decem annus natus*: Born before ten years, or full ten years old: And sometimes by an Ablative depending upon AB or IN; as, *Abhinc annus quindocim*: Fifteen years ago.

CHAP. V.

Of finding the Case of a Substantive after Words undeclinable.

SECT. 1. *After an Adverb.*

I. RULE. **E**N, ECCE (signifying Lo there, See, Behold,) have after them a Nominative or an Accusative, as the Verb understood requires; as,

Ecce

Ecce iterum (*adest*) monstrum nullâ virtute redemptum
A vitiis.

*See, here the Monster (comes) again;
Whose Wickedness no Virtue could restrain.
En (vide) habitum, quo te leges & jura ferentem
Montanum positus audiret vulgus aratris.
Behold the Garb, wherein the Mountaineer,
(His Plough laid by) thee giving Law did bear.*

II. RULE. Adverbs of Quantity, Time and Place
require a Genitive Case; as, Plus virium, More (of)
Strength. Nunc temporis, This (instant of) Time, Eo
loco, In that (space of) Place.

1. These Adverbs are either taken for, and us'd as Nouns, or else a
Noun is understood to support the Genitive after them. See Sect. 2.
2. About the Sign OF after a Noun, Adnoun or Adverb.

3. Adverbs of this Construction are such as follow. OF QUANTITY,
Abundantia, Abundance. *Affluens*, Plenty. *Infar*, Size, bigness. *Multum*,
Much. *Nimis*, Too much, excess. *Partim*, Part, some. *Parum*, Little,
scarcely. *Plus*, more. OF TIME, *Interca*, The mean, middle, interval.
Nunc, This instant. *Tunc*, That instant. *Prædie*, The day before. *Postea*,
After, Day after. OF PLACE, *Ei*, Thither. *Huc*, Hither. *Ibi*, There,
Thence. *Per hæc*, Thereabout. *Longè*, A great distance. *Nusquam*, No where,
whither. *Ubi*, where. *Uscumque*, Any where.

III. RULE. Certain Adverbs derived of Adjectives
Prepositions have the Cases of their Primitives;

Vivere Naturæ nos convenienter oportet.
Agreeably to Nature we must live.

Huc propius me,
Dum doce'o insanire omnes, vos ordin'e adite.
All you in turn come nearer me,
While I you show, how mad you be.

1. Constructions of this sort are; *Venit obviam* (obvius) *illi*: He come to
me (full face) on the way. *Canit similiter* (similis) *huc*: He sings like
this Man. *Sibi inutiliter* (inutilis) *vivit*: He lives unprofitably for
himself. *Propinquius* (propinquus) *tibi sedet, quam mihi*: He sits nearer
you, than to me. *Proxime* (prope) *Hispaniam*: Very near Spain. The
Construction of which is to be found in the Rule about TO and
FROM, and the Exceptions thereunto belonging.

IV RULE. Adverbs of Passion (commonly call'd Interjections) have after them such Cases as the Verb understood requires.

Voc. O Socii (*auscultate precor!*) ———

O (*qui*) passi (*estis*) graviora! dabit Deus his quoque finem.

O dear Companions listen to your Friend!

You've suffer'd worse; this too will have an end.

Nom. O qualis (*est*) facies! & quali digna tabellâ!

O where's the Pencil fit to draw the Face.

Acc. O fortunatos nimium (*putarem*), bona si tua nôcint, Agricolas!

O too too happy did they know

(Poor stupid Clowns!) what 'tis to plough and sow.

1. It being natural to express all the Passions in broken Language, the Construction of the Interjection is therefore *Elliptical*; but when the Sentence is fill'd up, the Case of the Substantive falls under the ordinary Rules of Government; as, *Hui* (*quanta est miseria*) *mihi*! Ah (*what a misery 'tis to*) me! *Va* (*nulum sit*) *tibi*! Wo (*mischief be*) to thee! *Proh* (*prohibeat ista*) *Deus*! Oh (*God*) forbid! *Hem* (*vidin'*) *servus* (*adeffe*) *tibi*! Hah (*a' ye see*) that man there! *Vah* (*abominor*) *incensuratum*! Ey (*I hate*) such sickness! And such like.

SECT. 2. Of the Case of a Substantive after a Preposition.

I RULE. These thirty Prepositions following, have an Accusative Case.

7. Ad, pënës, adversus, cis, citrâ, circiter, extra.

8. Erg'a, apud, antè, sêcus, trans, suprâ, vers'us & intra,

7. Ultrâ, post, prater, propter, p'opè, p'ônè, sêcundum,

8. Per, circum, circâ, contrâ, juxt'a, inter, ob, infra.

II. RULE. These fourteen Prepositions following have an Ablative.

Abiq; pâlam, A-B-S, cōram, prae, prō, sînc, dē, tēnus, E-X, cum.

III. RULE. These five Prepositions have an Accusative or an Ablative.

Casus utrumque regunt hæc subter, sub, supër, in, clam.

1. The use of Prepositions being to show a great variety of Relations between one thing and another, it has happen'd that they have been (every one more or less) so variously apply'd in their Significations, as to occasion one of the greatest difficulties in learning the Language. To exemplify each Preposition in its different Acceptations requires more room, than the brevity of this Institution will allow; and it is a Nicety too great for the Capacity of a young Learner: nor will it be necessary here, since Mr. Walker in his Treatise of Particles, and Dr. Littleton in his Dictionary have both very accurately furnish'd the Reader with Aids sufficient for this purpose, whenever there shall be need thereof. See also the Royal Vocabulary.

2. Prepositions are so call'd, because they commonly stand before the Cases on them depending: but *Versus* and *Tenus* always follows them; as, *Londonius versus*, London wards. *Pectoribus tenus*, Breast high; and sometimes with a *Genitive Plural*; as, *Crurum tenus*, Knee high. Thus *Cum* after these Pronouns, *Me, te, se, nobis, vobis, qui, quibus, cum*: And *Circum, contra, inter, penes, super, sine*, in Verse; as, *Quem penes arbitrium est, & jus & norma loquendi.*

IV. These ten Prepositions in Composition with Verbs have usually a Dative.

Sub, super, ad, (*com*.) con, præ, post, ob, in, inter & ante.

1. The Construction of a Dative with Verbs so compounded commonly happens, when the Preposition, which stands in Apposition before the English Noun; does by compounding the Latin Verb, lose the Government of its proper Case; as,

Enjoyments sometimes put *BETWEEN* thy Cares.

INTER pœne tuis interdum gaudia curis, for

Pœne tuis *INTER* nonnumquam gaudia curas.

2 Sometimes the Preposition both compounds the Verb and governs the Substantive in its proper Case. So *Virg.* in one place, *Ipse quiernicola rector subit*: and in another, *pleno subit ostia vela*, *Expellere pectore curas. Supernatant amorem.* Luc. For which expressions, *Use is the best Rule.*

3. The compounding Preposition is often repeated in Apposition too; as, *Galli INTER equites, sagittarios INTERFECERUNT*: The Gauls *INTER*pos'd the Archers *BETWEEN* the Horsemen. *A Planasum not usual in pure English.*

4. It may prevent mistakes in the young Learner to note the different effect of a Preposition standing before or after an English Verb; as, *To FORBID*, bid for. *OUTGO*, go out. *To GAIN SAY*, say again. *To UNDER-WITH-STAND*, stand under, with. *To WITHDRAW*, draw with, &c. All which are of very different significations, and must be render'd accordingly in the Latine. And to provide against the like Error in the use of Latine verbs compounded with the aforesaid Prepositions, here follows a List of them all in one view, by which the reader may perceive, that the greatest part of them do denote *Actions intransitive*, and therefore can have no *Accusative* after them; or else do involve an *Accusative* of their own Signification, and so do not need any. Those mark'd (*) are of a various Construction.

A D.

Accēdo, * to approach.
 Acclāmo, to applaud.
 Affulgeo, to shine upon.
 Aggēmo, to console with.
 Adhinnio, * to neigh at.
 Adjāceo, to border upon.
 Allābor, to slide by.
 Alludo, to smile on.
 Alinugio, to low at.
 Admurmūro, to grumble at.
 Applaudo, to cry up.
 Applōro, to console with.
 Apprōpinquo, * to approach.
 Acquiesco, to rely on.
 Adtēpo, to creep to.
 Arideo, to smile upon.
 Assentio, to agree with.
 Asservio, to wait on.
 Assideo, to sit by.
 Assisto, to aid.
 Aspiro, * to favour.
 Assipūlor, to agree with.
 Attrēpo, to din one.
 Adsum, to be present.
 Asurgō, to rise up to.
 Adversior, to oppose.

A N T E

Antecēdo, * to surpass.
 Anteco, * to excell.
 Antefēro, to preferr.
 Antepōno, to preferr.
 Antesto, to excell.
 Antevenio * to outgo.
 Antevertō, * to prevent.

C O M or C O N.

Conducō, * good for, conduce.
 Confido, to trust to.
 Cohæreo, to stick to.
 Commīnor, to threaten.

Commōdo, to advantage.
 Consentio, * to agree with.
 Consūlo, * to provide for.
 Convēnio, * to suit with.
 Convicior, to revile.
 Convivo, * to dwell with.

I N.

Ignosco, to pardon.
 Illābor, * to fall upon.
 Illacrymo, to weep over.
 Illātro, to bark at.
 Illūceo, to shine upon.
 Illūdo, * to mock at.
 Inimūneo, * to hover over.
 Immōror, to stay upon.
 Impalleo, to grow pale at.
 Impōno, * to put upon.
 Inpendeo, to hang over.
 Incommōdo, to hurt.
 Incūbo, to lie on.
 Incumbo, to lie at.
 Incurro, * to rush upon.
 Indignor, to be angry at.
 Indormio, to sleep on.
 Indulgeo, to humour.
 Innāto, to swim upon.
 Initor, * to rely on.
 Inservio, to wait on.
 In-sideo, -sido, to rest upon.
 Insidiar, to ensnare.
 Inisto, to pursue.
 Insum, to be in.
 Insusurro, to whisper to.
 Invideo, * to envy.

I N T E R.

Intercēdo, to withstand.
 Interjāceo, to lie between.
 Interlūquor, to interrupt.
 Interpōno, to interpose.
 Interlūm, present at.

Inter-

Intervēnio, to come upon.

O B.

Obedio, to obey.

Ocurro, to run against.

Ocurso, to encounter.

Officio, to hinder.

Oblātro, to bark at.

Oblōquor, to gainsay.

Obluctor, to strive against.

Obmurmūro, to murmur at.

Obnitor, to resist.

Oppēdo, to affront.

Oblēcundo, to assist.

Oblēquor, to comply with.

Obsidior, to way-lay.

Obliſto, to hinder.

Obſum, to be against.

Obſtrēpo, to clamour at.

Obtreſto, to defame.

Obvēnio, to befall.

Obverſor, to lie in wait.

P O S T.

Poſtſero, to disparage.

Poſthābeo, diſſeem, or

Poſtpōno, poſtpoſe, this to that.

P R Œ.

Præcipio, to command.

Præco, to outgo.

Præluceo, to ſort-out ſhine.

Præſum, to over-rule.

*Præſto, * to excell.*

*Præſtolor, * to wait for.*

Prævāleo, to overcome.

S U B.

Succēdo, to follow.

Succenſeo, to be angry at.

Succreſco, to under grow.

Succumbo, to underſtop.

Succurro, to relieve.

*Subōlet, *tis ſcented by.*

Suppētīt, it ſufficeth.

Subſcribo, to aſſent to.

Subſido, to ſink under.

*Subſiſto, *to ſtand under.*

Subſum, to be under.

Subvēnio, to aſſiſt.

S U P E R.

Superaddo, to ſuperadde.

Supercurro, to over-run.

Superfloreſco, to after bud.

Superfluio, to over-flow.

*Superſedeo, * to give over.*

Superſum, to remain over.

Supervēnio, to ſurprize.

Supervivo, to ſurvive.

5. The Verbs contain'd in this Liſt do belong to 3 Except. 2. Gen. Rule. Chap. 3. About finding the Caſe of the Subſtantive by its place. pag. 12.

Advertiſement concerning the Conjunction.

As far as a Conjunction is concern'd in the meer grammatical relation of Words in Conſtruction, was deliver'd in the Chap. of *Concord* pag. 3. to which place under that Conſideration it properly belongs; Beſides which, there is a more excellent uſe of this Particle in ſhowing the Logical Relation of Notions to each other in the Contexture of two, three, or a longer Train of Propoſitions: In which reſpect, altho' a Conjunction belongs to the Province of another ART; yet ſince there's a *Natural Logic* (call'd *Mother-wit*) antecedent to all Grammar, and which is capable of an early Cultivation, the Improvement thereof cannot be better attempted, than by exerciſing the Judgement upon ſome obvious Subject,

led, and by observing therein, what force and effect Conjunctions have in the interior Structure of a Language.

In order to this, Conjunctions were ranged (Chap. 12. pag. 63.) into three sorts, denoting the triple Relation of Notions to each other, either as *Consistent, Dependent or Repugnant*.

1. *Consistence* is, when according to our Apprehension two or more Causes may produce the same effect; or several different effects may have the same Cause, or various Accidents attend the same Subject. This is express'd by Conjunctions Copulative, or Concessive, by Adverbs of Presence, or Prepositions of Concomitance, and sometimes by the Pronoun *Idem*; as,

ET genus ET virtus NISI cum re vilior algâ est.

Atque idem jungat vulpes, & mulgeat hircos.

It shines and rains at once; it rains, altho' it shines.

While Clouds do drop, the Sun its Beams displays.

2. *Dependence* is, when the doing of one thing pre-requires some other, as the Cause, Reason or Condition of its being done. This is express'd by Conjunctions causal, conditional or illative. By Prepositions denoting the Efficient, Matter or Instrument, Concomitance, and also Solitude with an Adverb of Negation; as,

SI mea CUM vestris valuissent vota,

Non foret ambiguus tanti certaminis hæres.

'Tis day, for the Sun's up; If the Sun be up, then 'tis day.

'Tis therefore day, because the Sun is up.

The day begins with the Sun-rising.

It cannot be day without the Sun.

3. *Repugnance* is, when the Being or Doing of one thing cannot stand with the Being or Doing of another. This is express'd by Conjunctions disjunctive or exceptive, by Adverbs of Negation alone, or superadded to those of Concomitance; as,

NON bene CONveniunt, NEC in unâ sede morantur
Majestas & Amor.

Either 'tis day or night, for day and night cannot together be.

'Tis yet still day, unless the night be come.

C H A P. VI.

Of the Construction of Infinitives, Gerunds,
Supines and Participles.

Sect. 1. Of the Infinitive Active.

I. RULE. A Verb following a Verb, Participle or Adjective (the Particle *THAT*, Conjunction *THAT*, or any Potential Sign, *MAY*, *MIGHT*, *CAN*, *COULD*, *WOULD* or *OUGHT* coming or not coming between;) is usually made by a Latine Infinitive; as,

1. Scire volunt omnes, mercēdem (*sciendi vult*) solvere nemo.

*All feign would know, * None pay: the price (of doing so.)*

2. Ambo florentes ætatibus, Arcādes ambo;

Et cantare pares, & respondere parati: i. e. pares cantando, cantu; & parati ad respondendum.

Arcadians both, both in their blooming age,

Well-match'd TO sing, and ready TO engage.

3. Sublimes animas ad cælum hinc ire sciamus: i. e.

Quod animæ hinc eant.

*We know, * THAT Souls aloft from hence to Heaven go.*

1. How the Infinitive may supply the Nominative of a Noun before or after a Verb, was shew'd before; (Chap. 1. pag. 2. Not. 4. 5. 6. and Chap. 2. pag. 4. Not. 4.) 'tis here consider'd, as it may supply all the other oblique Cases: wherein as the Latine follows the Greek, so does the English so far imitate both, as to make this Construction familiar upon the first view of the following Examples; as, NOM. *To Lye* (or a Lye) *is the Devil's Diall.* GEN. *He that has an honest desire TO do* (OF doing) *well, will spare no endeavours TO amend* (OF amendment.) DAT. *He is fittest TO live* (FOR life,) *who is most ready TO die* (FOR death.) ACC. *None can learn TO practise* (THE practice of) *Virtue.* ABL. *Who has not first ceased TO do* (FROM doing) *evil.*

2. Tho' in English it be common, yet in Latine 'tis seldom that an Infinitive depends upon a Substantive, provided the words be plac'd in their natural order; thus, *Studium quibus arva tueri*, being rightly expounded, 'is, *Arva tueri est studium illis* or *illorum*: To till the ground; or look after the Fields is their business, *Arva tueri* being the Nominant or Subject, and *Studium* the Predicate of the Sentence. So *Tempus, apira tibi*, is the same, as *Adire est tibi tempus apira*.

3. In the three examples upon the Rule it appears, that Latine Infinitives have no constant Sign in the English to direct the Learner. TO never follows any other Potential Sign, but OUGHT, and THAT (whether 'tis to be esteem'd a Conjunction or rather a Relative) is often (through haste or negligence) omitted in English: as, QUOD and UT are in Latin: and then the Verb most commonly following is the Infinitive, unless some such Participle be understood; as, *Cave facias*: Beware you do it. Also those Potential Signs are in Latine often express'd by their own Verbs, as in Example 1. All would know: *Scire volunt omnes*. And sometimes both Signs and the Verbs together are render'd by a double Infinitive; as, I know (that) you may do it if you will: *Id, velle mudi, facere te posse scio*. Which Sequel of Infinitives is also common in other Verbs; as,

Quod nemo ignorat, solus vult scire videri.

He would seem to know alone,

* What a secret is to none.

Variations of the Latine Infinitive by casual Words.

I. EXCEPTION. TO after Noun, Pronoun or Participle variable by OF, is made by the Genitive of a Gerund, otherwise, by its Accusative with AD; as,

1. *Quibusdam in solo vivendi causa palato est.*

TO live some have no other reason: i. e. Reason OF living.

Unless it be to sauce their Weason.

2. *Ille novam cupidus moriendi querere vitam Gestit.*

Desirous he to die: i. e. Desirous of dying.

† A new Life sought-for joyfully.

3. *Ad bene dicendum ductus formidine fustis, Hor.*

TO leave reviling brought by dread of Club.

II. EXCEPTION. TO after Verbs of Motion or any other Words, that have an Accusative after them with AD (See I. EXC. about TO, pag. 19.) is made either by the Accusative of a Gerund with AD, or the Accusative of a Supine without AD; as,

1. *Animum ad scribendum appulit.*

He apply'd his mind to write (or writing).

2. *Spectatum veniunt, veniunt spectentur ut ipse.*

To see, and to be seen they come.

1. This Construction of a Supine has nothing extraordinary in it, but the absence of the governing Preposition, wherein it imitates *Donatus, rus* and the proper Names of places. See *Europe*. 1. about TO, Art. 2. And the Gerund may be varied; as, *Me invitatis ad canandum, canam, canaturus*.

nationem, conatulum. So after a Substantive, *Non est locus ad respirandum*, There is no place TO breathe, *respirandi* of breathing, *respirando* or *respirationi* for breathing, in *quo respiras*, wherein you may breathe. *Non est* (aded idoneus) *solvendo, solutioni, ad solvendum, (ut) qui solvat* : He is not (*so able*) for paying, payment, to pay, as who should pay.

III. EXCEPTION. TO after the Verb Substantive AM, imposing the Duty or Necessity of doing something, may be made by the Participle in DUS; but if the Purpose or Probability of doing by the Participle in RUS; as,

1. Orand'um est, ut sit mens san'a in corpore sano.

A well-taught Soul in well-mixt clay,

** Are gifts for which we ought TO pray.*

2. Tu neque majorem facias ratione malâ rem,
Nec sis facturus vitio culpâve minorem.

Do n't you by evil means your wealth increase,

Nor are you by your vice to make it less.

1. Duty and Necessity are in English express'd in such forms as these: *You should, ought, must, are bound, oblig'd, 'tis your duty, it behoves you to speak the truth or say nothing.* Which the Latine renders variously, as, *Vel dicenda est veritas, vel omnino silendum. Veritatem dicere debes, vel prorsus tacere. Oportet, necesse est, opus est, te verum dicere vel tacere; ut verum dicas, vel sileas.* Purpose or Probability is signified thus, *We must solve to day, as if we were (like or about) to die to morrow.* *Sic solvendum est hodie, tanquam cras moriturus, or morituri.*

2. The reason of this Construction is, that the Verb SUM ever draws after it the Participle of the Verb with which 'tis join'd, nor is there any Verb, but may be resolv'd into SUM and its own Participle. When therefore *est* is joyned with an Infinitive, that Infinitive becomes a Noun Substantive, whether it comes before or after, as, *Scir'e est ves-
cire, nisi id me * Scir'e alius scierit* : Knowledge is no knowledge, unless another knows that I know it: But in the Examples above, the Infinitive is ever taken Adjectively, and therefore must be tender'd by a Latine Participle.

SECT. 2. Of the Infinitive Passive.

I. RULE. TO BE, or any other passive Signs coming between a Verb or Adjective and a passive Participle, do show that the latter may be made by an Infinitive Passive; as,

1. Ornari res ipsa negat, contenta doceri.

The thing refuses to be dress'd.

** Contented to be well express'd.*

2. Conscius ipse sibi de se putat omnia dici.

Who on his secret guile reflects,

** That all is said of him, suspects.*

1. The Passives intimated in the Rule above are all Terminations of the Verb AM, such as, ART, IS, ARE, WAS, WERE, BE, BEEN: and the Passive Participle is, what any Verb forms (most commonly) by the Terminations D. T. N. By these two words the English Tongue expresses the Passive-Form of a Verb, as, I AM, *was*, have BEEN, *shall* BE Loved, Taught, Known; and therefore those Forms of speaking by AM and the Participle in ING are Active notwithstanding the Passive sign, because the Participle is Active. Thus, *I am, was, shall be writing*, are the same as, *I do, did or shall write*. (See the Rudiments, Pag. 30. Numb. 1, 2, &c.) However there are some Verbs of an intransitive Signification and nearly allied to Passives, which imitate both Forms, and may be render'd in Latine by *Nuntius* or *Passives*, as, *Abiit, discessit, perit*: He went, departed, perish'd. *Itum est ab illo, perditur*: He is gone, withdrawn, undone.

2. All the other Signs, MAY, CAN, MIGHT, COULD, &c. which equally belong to the Active and Passive Forms, are in both render'd after the same manner, as, *Pudet hoc opprobria & dici potuisse, & non potuisse refelli*. The Particles QUOD, UT, NE, are of the same concomitant here also, so that where-ever they appear, there no Infinitive, Active or Passive can follow.

Variations of the Infinitive Passive.

I. EXCEPTION. TO BE after the Verb Substantive AM or any Noun Substantive, is made by a Participle in DUS, or a Verbal in BILIS; as,

1. Nequicquam accepto claudend'a est janua damno,
In vain the door is to be shut,

** When all is out of danger past.*

2. — Morte magis metuenda senectus.

Old Age more to be fear'd than Death.

3. Improbis nostris non admirabilis ævo est.

In this our Age no Villainy,

** Is to be fear'd as a Prodigy.*

II. EXCEPTION. TO BE after Objectives denoting the manner of Action may be made by the Ablative of a Supine; as,

Nil dictu factum, visuq; hæc limina tangat,

Intra quæ puer est.

Unworthy to be said, or seen, or thought,

Let nothing be, where Youth is to be taught.

1. The Adjectives intimated in this Exception are such as, *Dignus, indignus, facilis, difficilis, turpis*, &c. after which the latter Supine is us'd to express the *Manner of Action*, as the former Supine did the *End or Term of Action*, (Sect. 1. Except. 2.) By which Construction Supines both show themselves and the Infinitives (for which they stand) to be Nouns; as, *Parvum dictu sed immensum affirmatio*. See the Rudiments Chap. 8. *Rule*. 2. pag. 31. But that the Learner may not think himself confin'd to the Supine, 'tis at his Liberty many times to use the following Variety; as, *Res cognita, cognitio, cognosci digna, or qua cognoscatur*: A thing worthy (to be known, or) of ones knowledge.

Sect. 3. *Of the English Verbal in ING.*

The English Verbal in ING has a threefold Signification. 1. It signifies the *Action of the Verb* from whence 'tis deriv'd; as, from *Scribere* to write, *Scripta* A or THE writing. 2. The *Effect of the Action*; as, *Scriptum* or *Scriptura*, A writing or Thing written. 3. The *Agent and Action together*; as, *Scribens*, one Writing; or *Scriptor*, a Writer.

I. RULE. The Verbal importing the Agent or Doer may (to prevent mistakes) be call'd ING PERSONAL; and when it governs the Case of its Verb, is to be render'd in Latin by the Active Particles in ANS, ENS or US; as, *Scribens*, one writing, or *Scripturus* one about, or like to write, *librum* a Book; otherwise by the Passive Substantive in OR; as, *Scriptor librorum*, a writer of Books; and when no case follows, by either indifferently; as,

*Carmina secessum scribentis (scriptoris) & otia quærun*t.

II. RULE. The Verbal importing the effect of thing done, may be call'd ING REAL; and is to be render'd by a Passive Substantive; as, *Scriptum* or *Scriptura*, A writing, or thing written. *Vestitus* or *Vestimentum*, Cloathing or Raiment.

III. The Verbal importing the Action whereby it was done, may be call'd ING ACTIONAL, and is to be render'd by a Verbal in IO, or a Gerund, and sometimes a Supine; as, *Scriptio* the writing *Scripti* of a writing fit to be done à *Scribento* by one writing, *Scribendo* by writing.

IV. RULE. The Case of all Verbals in ING are regulated by the same signs, and directed by the same Rules, as are observed in the Government of any other
Subj.

Substantive; as, *Amor tibi love scribendi of writing impellit unguis scribentem one writing ad scribendum to writing*; ut *that scribendo by writing saepe often scripta plurima many writings, fiat he may become peritus Scriptor a skilful Writer in libris scribendis in writing Books, or in Books to be written. See the Rudiments*; Chap. 9. *Rul. 6. Pag. 57.*

1. The use of these Rules is to assist the Learner in distinguishing the ambiguous Sense of the English Verbal in ING, and in expressing it by proper Verbals in Latine, which when found, the Construction of them falls under the common Rules. When a Verbal in ING denotes Action, there seems to be some difference between expressing it by the Verbal in *IO* and the Gerund, the former implying an Act more abstracted or potential; the latter an Act actuated or consider'd in actual Exercise: However, whether that nicety be worth the observing, Gerunds are much more us'd than Verbals in *IO*, partly because they retain the Regimen of their Verbs, which the other have lost; and especially because they may with so great Elegance be readily varied into Adjectives, and agree with the Nouns which they seem to govern. See *Sett. 4. Rul. 2.*

V. RULE. The Participle BEING between two Substantives is a Sign of an Apposition in the same Case; but between a Substantive and an Objective, Participle or other Substantive, to which no Verb answers; 'tis a Sign of an Ablative Absolute; as,

1. — Reg'e incolumi, mens omnibus un'a est;
Amisso, rupere fidem. —

*The King BEING safe, all minds were one;
BEING lost all fell into distraction.*

2. — Prima est hæc ultio; quod se
Judice nemo nocens absolvitur.

*All crimes are scourg'd with this first Punishment,
That self BEING judge, no man is innocent.*

1. This Ablative (tho' call'd Absolute) must, for a reason before given, depend upon some Preposition; 'tis a short and elegant way of expressing a Thought, and may upon occasion be varied by turning the Participle, or Verbal Noun into a Verb, with such an Adverb or Conjunction prefix'd, as the Sense requires.

2. This English Participle BEING is contain'd in the Passive Participle, if there be any; it may be express'd by *existens* where 'tis needfull, but 'tis understood with all Substantives and Adjectives in Latine, tho' it be frequently and significantly express'd in English.

VI. RULE.

VI. RULE. The Participle **HAVING** before a Participle in D. T. N. is render'd by the **Præter-Participle** of a Verb **Active** in OR; or (for want of that) by some **Præter** of the **Active** in O, with *cum*, *postquam*, &c. as, *Hæc locutus*, or *cum hæc dixisset*, *expiravit*: He having spoken (or when he had said) these things he died. Or by an **Ablative Absolute**; as, *His dictis*, *expiravit*: These things being (or having been) said, he died. See Rudiments, Pag. 58. Not. 2.

SECT. 4. Of Gerunds, Supines and Participles, as they draw Cases after them.

I. RULE. Gerunds, Supines and Participles us'd in the same manner as their respective Verbs, have after them the same Cases; as,

Utendum est state, cito *pede præterit ætas*.

Use well your time,

** You'll soon be past your prime.*

1. Some Verbals in IO are found to imitate the Construction of their Verbs; as, *Tallio hæc rem*, *Traditio alteri*, *Raditio domum*; but 'tis a Construction not now to be imitated.

I. EXCEPTION. Gerunds leaving the Construction of their own Verbs, become Latine **Abstracts** to these Nouns, which in the English they seem to govern; as,

1. *Perdidit arma, locum virtutis deseruit, qui Semper in augenda festinat, & obruitur se.*

Disarm'd, to vertue lost and to himself;

Who sweats o'er head and ears in heaping Pelf.

2. *Turpibus heu! faciles imitandis quam sumus omnes?*

Alas! How free

** In imitating naughtiness are we?*

3. *Æstuat occultis animus semperq; tacendis.*

His Heart burns (like a scorching Kill)

With secrets to be stift'd still.

1. When a Gerund ceases to govern the following Noun, it either stands as an *Adjective* before it, or as a *Participle* after it. As an *Adjective*, it still retains the English of a Gerund, being render'd by the *Adimal Verbal* in ING, as if it were still a Gerund; as, *Sunt quidam ad se fugitiva, ut ea ne conservandæ quidam patriæ causâ*, (for causâ conservandæ patriæ) *sapientissimæ sit*: so impious are some things as a wife

wife man would not do, no not for the sake of saving his *Quære*. But coming after its *Substantive*, 'tis render'd in English no longer like a *Gerund*, but as a *Participle* in *DUS*, and being thereby capable of passing its Signification upon some casual word following, it may govern the Case proper to a *Passive Participle*; as, *Fors putanda uerix infansibus uera magnis*; The Nurse bears Paps to be drain'd BY Infants overgrown. Or by a *Verbal* in *BILES* in the same Construction and Signification; as, *Amor nullis est (medicandus or) medicabilis herbis*: Love is to be heal'd BY no Herbs.

2. This Variation of the *Gerund* by an *Adjective* in *DUS*, is a frequent and very elegant Construction in the Latine, but very liable to be mistaken by young Beginners, who being deceiv'd by the ambiguous Signification of the English *Verbal* in *ING*, do put the *present Participle* in *ANS* or *ENS* for the *Adjective* in *DUS*, as, To say corruptly, *IN LEGENTE LIBROS*, In reading Books, when it should be said, *In legendis libris*, or, *In lectis librorum*, or, *In legendis libris*. Which (besides what was observ'd about the *Verbal* in *ING* in its proper place) is here again mention'd for greater Caution.

II. EXCEPTION. The *Genitive* of a *Gerund* may have another *Genitive* of a *Noun* after it; as, *Concessa est licentia diripiendi pomorum*: A liberty of snatching (of) Apples is allow'd. *Tempus est videndi lunæ*: 'Tis the time of seeing (of) the Moon.

1. In this Construction the *Gerund* is us'd as a common *Noun*. As if it were, *Licentia diripiendi pomorum*, or, *Tempus visum lunæ*. For as two *Infinitives* may follow one *Verb*, so may two *Genitives* depend upon one *Substantive*,

III. EXCEPTION. *Passive Participles* of the *Preter-tense*, as well as *Adjectives* of a *Passive Signification*, have after them an *Accusative* of the part affected; as,

Hæc laniata comas, hæc tunc pectora palmis.

This having torn her Hair, these bruise'd their Breasts with Blows.

1. The Latine Poets do much imitate this Greek Construction, in which the *Accusative* seeming to depend on the *Passive Participle* (but which a learned Man calls an *Accusative Absolute*) is indeed govern'd of *Circa* about, *quoad* as to, or *secundum* nigh to, answering to *Prepositions* of like Importance in the Greek, which are also in that Language sometimes expressed; as,

*Ος καὶ σῶμα καλὸς, καὶ νῦν δ' αὖ ὄν ἀμορφος,

Αἰσχαρὸς δὲ πλὴν μοι δοκῶ, ἢ καλός.

In Body fair, but ugly in his Soul;

Seems more deformed far, than beautifull.

*Tus

'Tis a sort of Phrase which the English Young (especially after an Adjective) cannot render without a Preposition, as, (*Circā*) as *humeris* *Dei similis*: Much like an Angel 'bout his Arms and Face. But where a Participle is us'd, 'tis but fancying *Præters* of the *Passive Form* to be of a middle Voice; that is, capable of an Active and Passive Signification, as the Case following requires; and then the English, which abounds with *Active Præters*, will express the sense exactly; as, *Multr̃ jam fract̃* *Eñ mēbra labor̃*: Having by much labour now decay'd his Limbs.

The End of the Syntax.

An APPENDIX to the second Chapter of the *Syntax*, Concord the Third, between the *Substantive* and *Adjective*; wherein are deliver'd the Rules for finding the *Genders* of *Nouns*: 1. By Signification. 2. By Termination. 3. By Declension and Termination both together.

Sect. 1. Of finding the Gender by the Signification.

I. RULE. 1. *Gods.* 2. *Angels.* 3. *Men.* 4. *Months.*
5. *Rivers.* 6. *Wind.*

Of Masculines by Signification.

In proper Names are of the better kind.
So common Names of 7. *Men*, and *Roman* 8. *Coin*,
(As *AS* with its parts) take for Masculine.

The reason of this and the two following Rules is, that all the Names of singulars or particulars do follow the Gender of the next general or common Word, under which they are comprized; as, 1. *Hic Jupiter*, *Apollō*, &c. because *Hic Deus*, a God. 2. *Hic Michael*, *Hic Seraphim*, *Hic Archyjan*, *Satanas*; because *Hic Angelus*, an Angel. 3. So *Carolus*, *Georgius*; because *Hic Vir*, a Man. 4. So *Januarius*, *Aprilis*, *Octob̃r*; because *Hic Mensis*, a Month. 5. *His*, *Ouse*, *Tam̃sis*, *Thames*; because, *Hic Fluvius*, a River; but many in *A*, as *Alma*, *Sabrina*, *Lut̃a* and *Syx*, follow the Gender of *Hac Aqua*, Water; and some, as, *Jader*, *Nar*, that of *Hic Flumen*, a great Stream. 6. *Aquilo*, *Beris*, *Etesia*; as *Hic Ventus*, the Wind. 7. *Rex*, *Pil̃er*, *Orator*, *Officĩs*, an Assistant; as *Hic Vir*; but 'tis *Ha Copia*, Soldiers; *Opera*, Labourers; *Castella*, Guards; and *Hic Mancipium*, a Slave; *Prohib̃itum*, a Scrumper; *Scortum*, a Harlot. Because these words importing things, are onely by Translation or Transnomination wrested from their primary and proper Sense to denote Persons; and therefore do still retain the Gender of their first Signification. 8. *AS* signifies the Roman Pound divided into 12 Ounces; of which *Hic Denus* is 11, *Decur̃s* 10, *Drac̃us* 9, *Bes* 8, *Septim̃s* 7, *Sextim̃s* 6, *Quintim̃s* 5, *Tertius* 4, *Quadrans* 3, *Sextans*

Sextans 2, Sessum half an Ounce, all which imply *Nummus* Coin, but *Unia* one Ounce (*quasi pars unica*) is Feminine: also the *AS* multiply'd is *Hic Denarius*, *Census*.

II. RULE. 1. A Goddess, 2. Woman, 3. Country, 4. City, 5. Isle.

*Of Feminines
by Significa-
tion.*

In proper Names you may all Female stile.
So 6. Women called by a common Name,
And 7. Trees for Gender you may count
the same.

1. So *Juno*, *Minerva*, *Venus*; as *Hæc Dea*. 2. *Anna*, *Maria*, *Sapphira*, as *Hæc Femina*. 3. *Anglia*, *Scotia*, *Gallia*; as *Hæc Terra*, *Provincia*. 4. *Roma*, *Athena-arum*, *Corinthus*, &c. as *Hæc Urbs*: *Daphnorum*, but *Salmis*, *Agrægas*, &c. as *Hic Pagus*, *Vicus*, a Village: *Oronum*, *Præneste*, *Tibur*, *Baïtra-arum*; as *Hoc Oppidum*. Which Names of Cities, altho' they take the Gender most agreeable to their Termination; yet do they sometime admit Feminine Adjectives, because of *Urbs* understood. The places themselves are most of them long since ruin'd, nor are the Names but seldom mention'd, to be critical in so trivial a matter is not worth the Pains, and therefore when they occur, the Dictionary may be consulted. 5. So *Britannia*, *Hibernia*, *Cyprus*, *Delos*, because *Hæc Insula*. 6. So *Nutrix*, *Oleatrix*; because *Hæc Femina*. 7. So *Cedrus*, *Mâlus*; because *Hæc Arbor*, *Planta*. But *Hic Oleaster*, *Pinastr*, *Dumus*, *Spinus*; and *Hic* or *Hæc Dumus*. Also *Hic Baccum*, *Balsamum*, *Elium*; and *Hoc Acetum*, *Siler*, *Saber*, *Thus*, *Robur*; because 'tis *Hæc lignum*, Wood. Of which and the like (upon occasion) see the Dictionary; but the general reason of making these Nouns Feminine seems to be, because Countries are (as it were) the Mothers of Trees and other Products of the Earth; as Trees themselves are of their Fruits. See the Rudiments pag. 7. *Rel.* 7. in the Notes.

III. RULE. Use *Hic* and *Hæc*, when Nouns both 1. Sexes mean.

Of Nouns Masculine or Feminine by Signification.

Else only 2. *Hic* or *Hæc*, when 3. Epicene.

1. Words distinctly applicable to either Sex, may admit an Adjective of either Gender; such as these following:

Antistes, *Præcepti*, *Vates*, *Convivia*, *Sacerdos*,
Bar, *Custas*, *Sus*, *Nemo*, *Comes*, *Testis*, *Comis*, *Author*,
Conjux atque *Parvulus*, *Infans*, *Patruelis* & *Hares*,
Dux, *Judex*, *Vindex*, *Affinis*, *Miles* & *Hostis*,
Exlex, *Municipi*, *Artifici*, *Civis*; *Adolescent*.

2. But Nouns signifying both Sexes confusedly admit Adjectives in the Masculine Termination only; such as, *Adipex*, *affers*, *enel*, *fur*, *homo*,

homo, larva, liberi, obfes, vulva, fene, fudalis, &c. Thus 'tis not faid, *Homo bona*, or *fur magna*, or *Senex vegeta*: but *bona femina, femina facillima*, and *vetula vegeta*.

3. Nouns are faid to be *Epicene*, when they fignify both Sexes, but are declin'd only with one Article. Of this fort, are moft of the Names of Birds, Beasts, and Fishes: wherein it was thought a needlefs Curiofity to denote each Male and Female with a peculiar Name. Thus, *Hic Pafser* fignifies the whole kind of Sparrows under a Masculine Article: and *Hæ Aquila* that of Eagles, under the Feminine; But if either is diftinctly apply'd to fignify one Sex and not the other; there's an Appofition of *Mas* or *Femella*; as, *Aquila mas*, is the Cock, and *Paffer Femella*, is the Hen. Howbeit in fome Creatures of the nobler or more ufe-full fort, the Sex is diftinguifhed by peculiar Names; as, *Leo* a Lion, *Lea* or *Laona* a Lionefs; *Equus* a Horfe, *Equa* a Mare; *Taurus* a Bull, *Vaca* a Cow; *Gallus* a Cock, *Gallina* a Hen, &c. But with what Article an *Epicene* is to be declined, will be found under that Declenfion, to which the word belongs.

SECT. 2. *Of finding the Gender by Termination.*

I. RULE. The 1. End unchang'd, or 2. *UM*'s a Sign,
Matters by You must fuch Nouns with *HOC* decline.
Termination.

1. Nouns not changing their Termination are call'd *Aptues* or invariable; fuch as are all Englifh Nouns, and fome few in the Latine; as, *Fas, nix, cornu, gummi, Tempus, pondus, Sinus*, &c. Invariable alfo are thefe Adjectives; *Totus, quatuor, centus*, and all the intermediate Numbers; but they are of all Genders.

2. Nouns originally Neuter in *UM*, become Masculine or Feminine, when apply'd as proper Names to Men or Women; as, *Mi lepida Pagnigum*, *Mæa Glycyrrhizum*; otherwife not, as, *Mæum cucurbitum*.

SECT. 3. *Of finding the Gender by Terminations in each Declenfion.*

I. DECLENSION.

I. RULE. 1. *A* of the first is always Feminine,
I. Exception. 2. Unless descended from the Græcian Line;
II. Exception. 3. Or fuch; as by its Sense is Masculine.

1. The common Termination of this Declenfion is *A*. Some Greek Words end in *A* or *E*; as, *Grammatica, -a, Musica, -a, &c.* or in *E* ones; as, *Epistola, Penultima, &c.* but thefe are all Feminine.

2. Such Greek Words as end in *ES* or *A*, (as *Attila, -a, a Gamester, Camæra, -a*, a blazing Star; fo *Planeta, a wandering Star*, from *ἀστὴρ, κομήτης, πλανήτης, &c.*) are Masculine. So *Assyntus, Pyxis, Sarcis, &c.*

3. *Scriba* a Scrivener, *Sourna* a Buffoon, &c. are Masculine by Signification; fo is *Adria* the Gulf of Venice, as implying *Sinus*; but *Dama* a Buck or Doe, and *Talpa* a Mole are Masculine and Feminine.

II. DECLENSION.

- I. RULE. 1. I th' second ER, OS, US, are masculine,
 II. RULE. 2. And ON, UM, still with HOC decline:
 I. Exception. 3. But when US stands for OS in Greek,
 Such Nouns you should decline with Hæc.

1. ER, OS, US, are all the masculine Terminations in this Declension, except *Vir* a Man (contracted from *Virus*, -ri,) and its Compounds, *Levir*, *Semivir*, &c. *Satur* for *Saturnus* full: But these few in US vary from the Rule in manner following.

1. HÆC Domus & vannus, sic carbāsū, alvus, humusq.
2. HIC, HÆC sed grossus, penus & specus, atq; phasēlus.
3. HOC pelāgus, virus, HIC, HOC variabile vulgus.

2. All Nouns ending in ON or UM (unless some few Names of Men and Women, which take their Gender from their Signification,) are Neuters by the general Rule of Terminations, *Self*. 2.

3. Greek Words in OS, which take the Latine Termination US, are such as these:

1. Anridōtus, balānus, crīstallus, barbīrus, Arctus.
2. Byssus & abyssus, Atōmus, diphthongus, erēmus.
3. Ex-peri-meth-syn-ōdus, dia- (sic) peri- (junge) mētūsūq;
4. Costus & hyssopus, sapphirus jūnge papyrus.

Of these *Diamēter* and *Perimēter* vary their Termination; *Hæc Aristæus*, *Barbīten*, *Hysōpūm*; their Termination and Gender both. The rest are all Feminine.

III. DECLENSION.

- I. RULE. Masc. 1. AN, ER, IN, OS, ON, OR, O, HIC.
 II. RULE. Fem. 2. AS, AUS, ES, IS, S guarded, HÆC.
 III. RULE. Neut. 3. And C, A, L, E, T, AR, EN, UR, US, HOC.
 All to the third Declension flock.

1. This memorial word *Auribus Onore* contains the Seven Masculine Terminations of this Declension. *Auribus* and S guarded with a preceding Consonant, (as *Arx*, *Pax* or *Pact*, which is also called S impure, tho' improperly) contain the five Feminine Terminations. *Calet Arcurus*, the Nine Neuter; in all twenty one. The great diversity in which Terminations, as well as forming the Genitive from them, occasioning more Perplexity to the young Learner, than all the Declensions besides; will by being rang'd in this method abate the Trouble in great part; and for the Formation of the Genitive, reading will do more than all Rules.

- I. RULE. AN, ER, IN, OS, ON, OR, O, HIC, as,
 Of Masculines. Arbor, agōn, Delphin, flos, titan, pugio, venter.

1. Ex-

1. Except. Of *Feminines* in ON, ER, OS, O.

1. All Nouns in DO, GO, which two sounds transcend,
2. And those in IO, which from Verbs descend.
3. Seditio, ditio, communio, linter & icon.
4. Talio, per (*que*) duellio, grando, rebellio, sindon.
5. Cos, caro, conditio, *sic* dos *queq*; portio & arbor.
6. All these among the Females use to harbour.

1. Nouns in DO, GO, which exceed two Syllables, are Feminine; but *HIC Harpago*, a Grapple-hook.

2. Verbals in IO (as *Oratio, Petio*) are in Latin very numerous, and by taking N, do form almost as many English: These also are all Feminine; except *HIC Opris* an assistant or Deputy, *HIC Perduellio* a Traitor, *HIC Fugio* a Dagger, *HIC Unio* a Jewel, *HIC Ternio* the Trey, *Semis* the Six-point, implying *Numerus*. But *HIC* or *HÆC Cardo* a Hinge, and *Margo* a Brink or Border.

2. Except. Of *Neuters* in ER, OR, OS.

1. *Neutra* cadaver, iter, cor, marmor, zinziber, æquor.
2. Ver, ador & laser, cicer & piper *atq*; papaver.
3. Suber, tuber, epos, *sic* os, filer, & sifer, uber.

II. RULE. *AS, AUS, ES, IS, S* guarded, *HÆC, æd*, Of *Feminines*. *Ætas*, laus, merces, iris, (*biconsonant*) ars, pax.

1. Except. Of *Masculines* in AS, ES, IS and S *impure*.

1. As *cum prole*, adamas, elephas & stipes & ames.
2. ES (*us*) *queq*; *gratorum*, *us* magnes, lebes, *queq*; *tapesque*.
3. *Sic* trames, gurgis, limes, *cum* cespice, fomes.
4. Pes, poples, paries, palmes, *cum* termite, vepres.
5. Cassis, fascis, funis, crinis, *sic* cinis, ignis.
6. Callis, caulis, follis, collis, mensis & ensis.
7. Cenchris, sentis, vermis, mugilis, axis, aqualis.
8. Glis, panis, piscis, postis, pulvis, lapis, amnis.
9. *Sic* sanguis, torris, cucumis, *lienis* & orbis.
10. Es vectis, funis, seps, uni (*que*) cornis & unguis.
11. Mons, pons, fons, *queq*; rudens, hydrops *cum* dente, bident, grex.
12. Gryps, chalybs, torrens, phoenix *cum* fornice, bombyx.
13. Adde calix, varix, *simul* & *dissyllaba* in AX, EX.
Nouns in AX, EX of two Syllables.
14. Feminine; carex, fornax, *cum* forfice, pellex.
15. Dubia; limax, cortex, pumex, *cum* silice, imbrex.

1. Among

1. Among Nouns in *IS* are to be reckon'd those *Greek* Words in *IS* as, *HÆC* Chelys a Lute, *Chlamys* a Soldiers Coat. But *HIC* or *HÆC* *Anguis* a Snake, *Cavalis* a Channel, *Clunis* a Buttock, *Finis* an End or Border, *Palumbus* a Stock-Dove, *Torques* (for *torquis*) a Collar, are double-fall, that is, some Authors use them in one, others in a different Gender. Observe also, that *Affinis* allied by Marriage, *Civis* a Citizen, *Hostis* an Enemy, *Juvenis* Young, *Miles* Soldier, *Senex* Old, *Sodalis* Companion, *Testis* Witness, *Vates* a Prophet-ess, &c. are by their Signification Masculine or Feminine, as you have occasion to apply them either to Men or Women.

2. These in *Simpure*, *Alpeus* Fox, *Culex* a Reed, *Lynx* a spotted Deer, *Dryas* a precious Stone, *Perdix* a Partridge, *Serpens* a Serpent, *Seros* (or *feros*) a Ditch, *Stirps* a Stock, *Tradux* a Graff, are Masculine or Feminine.

3. Except. Of Neuters in *AS, ES*.

1. *Neutra*; *Æs*, *vas*, *panāces*, *nepenthes* & *cacoëthes*.

III RULE. *C, A, L, E, T, AR, EN, UR, US, HOC*, as, Of Neuters. *Limen*, *onus*, *mel*, *drama*, *jecur*, *lac*, *rête*, *cāpur*, *far*.

1. Except. Of Masculines in *L, EN, UR, US*.

1. *Mascula*; *Sal*, *mugil*, *sol*, *lichen*, *splenq*, *lienq*;
2. *Ren*, *peſten*, *flamen*, *furfur*, *cum turtur*, *vultur*.
3. *Musq*, *lepus*, *quæ trusq*, *creas*, *communis* as *est grus*.
As, *A-tri-poly-pus-pōdis*,

2. Except. Of Feminines in *US*.

1. *But Tellus*, *pēcus-ūdis*, *jūventus*, *virtus*, *pīlus*.
2. *And such as* *Incus*, *servītus*, *sēnectus*, *subscūs*, *ſālus*.
3. Which when with *ūdis*, *ūrus*, *ūtur* you decline,
Remember all such Nouns are Feminine.

IV. DECLENSION.

I. RULE. 1. *US* in the fourth is ever Masculine:

II. RULE. 2. But *U* unvaried still with *HOC* decline.

1. Except. Of Feminines in *US*.

1. *HÆC* *Acus*, *ficus*, *porticus*.
2. *And Dōmus*, *tribus*, *idus*.
3. *With Mānus*, and all Names of Trees.
4. *But Rūbus* *HIC*, and *spīnus*.

1. There are but seven words that end in *U* unvariable, *Cornu* a horn, *Glyu* frost, *Genu* knee, *Pign* provision. *Sylva* den, *Tantra* thunder, *Venu* a spir; which are also Neuter by the general Rule of Terminations, *Sect.* 2.

V. DE,

V. DECLENSION.

I. RULE. 1. Nouns of the fifth all end in ES,
2. And Female are ; as, *FACIES*.

EXCEP. 1. Yet *Dies* sometimes *HIC* and sometimes
TION, *HÆC* decline.

Of Masculines. 2. But *Sesqui-meri-dies* are wholly Masculine.

1. *Dies* is most commonly Feminine in the singular, and sometimes so in the Plural ; as, *O reliquas omnes dies, nollisq; eas, quibus, &c.* Cic. pro Plancio ; but its Compounds (*Meridies* mid-day, *Sesquidies* a day and half) are Masculine only.

ADVERTISEMENT.

THE reason for placing the Rules for Genders here, after the *Syntax*, was intimated in the *Radiments* Chap. 3. p. 13. *Nom.* 1. And certainly the first approaches to Learning ought to be recommended by the easiest methods. For altho' the desire of knowledge be implanted in humane Nature, yet knowledge it self (like an *Exotick Plant*) requires a nice and curious Cultivation, even where there's a rich soil prepar'd for its Reception. There are few of a capacity, and not many of an Industry proportionate to great Attainments : and the learning of *dead Languages*, in the way commonly us'd, is so far from being an agreeable entertainment to young Scholars : that whereas the *Mother Tongue* is speedily acquir'd with Sport and Pleasure, those other are the slow and ungratefull Productions of Force and Drudgery. To lessen which difficulties, this present method for the ease both of the Memory and Understanding is contriv'd ; and the learning thereof purposely desir'd, till the young Scholar has been well exercised in the Rules of *Syntax*, and his Memory (by writing as well as reading Latine) furnish'd with such a competent store of Words, as no longer to need a constant recourse to his Dictionary. Then it will be seasonable by frequent Reviews and Repetitions to make these Rules familiar to him, in which altho' not every Latine Noun is compris'd, (because there are many words, which a young Scholar cannot, and the oldest Student need not understand : and besides, many *Terms of Art*, which are so much the peculiar Language of certain Faculties, as to be neither usefull, nor indeed intelligible to any not conversant therein :) Yet here is sufficient to carry the young Scholar so far in the common Roman Dialect, till he has attain'd a habit of writing and Speaking superior to all the Rules of Grammar. Wherefore it has been thought no prejudice to the Latine Tongue, that such words as *culax*, *dropax*, *spadix* and *urpiz*, together with *Cis* and *Fris*, &c. which are fitter to be put in a Conjecturs list, should be here totally omitted ; as being such, of which an ingenious man may be commendably ignorant. Nor is there any such exact account given about doubtful words, as positively to determine whether the greatest number or the worthiest Authors have us'd them more often in this, or in a different Gender ; because a man may arrive to great and excellent Learning without such Pedantry, nor is Grammar learn'd to make every

not a mere Grammarian, but only pass'd through as an Introduction to that real and usefull knowledge, whereby he may become beneficial to the publick.

A list of *Flouns* usually call'd *Heteroclitics*; that is some way or other differing from the common forms of inflexion; where *N. S.* signifies No singular, *N. P.* No plural, *m.* masculine, *f.* feminine, *c.* common, *n.* neuter, *inv.* invariable.

A.	Cassida-æ, f. &	F.
Abusio-ōnis, f.	Cassididis, f.	Fama-æ, f. N. P.
Abusus-ūs, m.	Cetus-i, m. pl.	Fas, nefas, n. inv.
Alluvio-ōnis, f.	Cete, n. inv.	Fasti-orum, m. N. S.
Alluvium-ii, n.	Chaos, nom. acc.	Fraxum-i, n. pl.
Alluvies-ēi, f.	Chao, ab. n.	Fraxi-a-orum, m. n.
Æthēra, æthra-æ, f.	Cælum-i, n. pl.	G.
Æthēr-ēris, m.	Cæli-orum, m.	Gēlu, n. inv.
Apes & āpis-is, f.	Contāges-is, f.	Gummi-is, f.
Arānēa-æ, f.	Contāgium-i, n.	Gummi. n. inv.
Araneus-i, m.	Contāgio-onis, f.	H.
Arbor & os-ōris, f.	Cūnæ-arum, f. N. S.	Hālec-ēcis, f. n.
Arma-orum, n. N. S.	Cūnābūla-orum, n.	Hierosolyma-æ, f.
Athēnæ-arum, f. n. f.	D.	Hierosolyma-orū, n.
Avernus-i, m. N. P.	Dāpis-em-e, pl.	I. J.
Averna-orum, n.	Dāpes-um, f. &c.	Iter-inēris, n.
B.	Delicium-i, n. pl.	Inficias, acc. f.
Bacchanalia-orum	Deliciæ-arum, f.	Ingratis, ab. f.
Ōium-ibus, &c. n. f.	Dōmus-i-ūs, d. ui,	Instar, n. inv.
Balneum-i, n. pl.	ab. o, pl. us-orum,	Jocus-i. m. pl. joci-
Balnea-orum, n. &	& uum, ac. os-us, -a-orum, m. n.	
Balneæ-arum, f.	ab. domibus, f.	Jugēum-i, n. jüge-
Baptismus-i, m. &	E.	ris, ab. re, n. pl. ju-
Baptisma-ātis, n.	Effigia-æ, f.	gera-um, n.
Beatitas-atis, f.	Effigies-ēi, f.	Jupiter gen. Jovis.
Beatitudo-dinis, f.	Elephantus-i, m.	Iustu, injustu, ab.
Bos-ōvis, c. pl. bō-	Elēphas-antis, m.	Juventa-æ f. N. P.
ves, boum, bō-bū-	Elylium, ar. cælum.	Juventus-ūtis, f. n. f.
bus.	Epilum-i, n. pl.	L.
C.	Epilæ-arum, f.	Locus, ar. Jocus.
Carbāsus-i, f. pl.	Eventum-i, n.	Lac-ētis, n. N. P.
Carbāsa-orum, n.	Eventus-ūs, m.	Libēri-brū, m. N. S.

M.	Pascha-æ, f. ætis, n.	Supellex-ætis, f.
Mænalus, æ, Avern.	Permissu, abl.	Supellestilia-iū, n.
Mane, n. inv.	Pistrina-æ-um-i.	T.
Manes-ium, m. N.S.	Plebs-bis, & es-is.	Tābum-i, es-is, f.
Materia-æ-es-ei, f.	Plēbes-ēi, f.	Tapērum-i, te-is, n.
Menda-æ-um-i.	Prēcis, æ, dapis.	Tapētestapes-ētis, f.
N.	Plus, nom. acc. ūris, g.	Tartarus, æ, Avern.
Natu, ab.	plure, ab. pl. plu-	Thebæ-arum, N.S.
Nectar, n. æ Lac.	res, plura, & ia,	Tonitrus-i, m. toni-
Neceffitas-ætis, f.	g. ium. ibus.	trum-i, tonitru,
Neceffitudo-Inis, f.	Q.	n. inv. pl. tonitrua.
Nēquam, inv.	Quatuor, quinque,	V.
Nēquitia-æ, f. &	&c. so centum of	Vas-sis, n. pl. vasa-
Nēquities-ēi, f.	all genders, inv.	-orum.
Noctu, abl.	So Mille the Adject.	Vespēra-æ, us-i, m.
Nūgæ-arum, N.S.	R.	Vesper-is, m.
Nuptiæ-arum, N.S.	Rastrum, æ, frænū.	Verbēris, g. verberē
Nundinum, æ, Epul	Requies-ētis-ei, f.	ab. pl. verbera-um, n.
O.	S.	Vicem, ab. vice, f.
Obliviū-ii-o-ōnis.	Sapientia-æ. N. P.	pl. vices, vicibus.
Opis, æ, dapis.	Scopæ-arum, N.S.	Vis, g. vis, acc. vim;
Oleum-ei, n. N. P.	Sināpis-is, f. & Si-	ab. vi, pl. vires-
P.	nāpi, n. inv.	-ium-ibus, f.
Pangæus, æ, Avern.	Sponsalia-orū, N.S.	Vulgus-i, m. & n. n. p.
Papyrus-i, f. um-i, n.	Spontis, g. -te, æ, f. n. p.	

1. This List is not intended to contain all irregular words, for they are too numerous; but only to show their various irregularities, where- in the Learner may observe, that the same word may be of different Declensions, as well as Genders; as, *Aranea, araneus*; *hoc Catum, hi celi*. That some want the singular Number, as *Divitia*; others the plural, as the Names of Metals; as, *Aurum, argentum*; of Liquors; as, *Oleum*; of Grain; as, *Triticum*; proper Names; as, *Carolus, Georgius, Anna, Susanna*. Tho' these also may be Plural when the sense requires it. Lastly, That some have only certain Cases in each Number; as, *quis, dapis, natu, inficis, ingratis*. And these are sufficient to caution a young Scholar, that for the rest he should consult his Dictionary by a strict examination of every word, as it occurs in reading, or is to be us'd in making Latine; the way to avoid mistakes in this, and all busi- ness being, *Never to think ones self too sure*. Nor is this care unnecessary, tho' in a matter that touches neither life nor limb: for since the Criticks who claim a Sovereignty in this Province, have been pleas'd to enact it, as *CRIMEN LÆSÆ LATINITATIS*, as heinous almost, as Clipping and Coining; that any word be us'd in any Case, Gender or

Number, which is not of true Roman Stamp, and exemplified in some classic Writer, it will be better for peace sake patiently to submit, than to dispute whether all the Authors now extant do contain all the words and forms of speaking at once current in the Language of Rome. But if this seems too strict an imposition, the great Dictator of Language Italy himself was so scrupulous in this point, that such as might be apt to despise the insolence of Dutch Pedants, will allow some deference to the Example of so great a Master. *Uti noster* (says he) *spartes appellat, non possim id quidem, sed instilliter ad mutandos casus in dicendo. Nihil enim si latini quidem dici possit, specierum & speciebus dicere, & saepe his casibus utendum est, ac formis & formarum velim; cum autem utroque, verbi idem significatur, commoditatem in dicendo non arbitror negligendam.* Cic. Topic. To follow the Analogy of the Roman Tongue in the invention of new words, necessity may excuse: but 'tis not enough to plead it in the unexempl'd use of an old one.

This Summary of Directions for turning Latin into English, or English into Latin concludes the Syntax.

The Nominant and Verb in Syntax are
 Two Pillars which the whole composition bear.
 The Signs DO, AM, the Verb will ever show;
 The Nominant is found by WHAT or WHO.
 By Nominant and Verb together join'd,
 The case succeeding you will ever find.
 Each other case by proper Signs is known,
 By Preposition, Termination, }
 Or Apposition of two Nouns in one.
 A Noun and Participle with no sign put to't,
 For Verb annex'd, in case is absolute.
 Observe distinctive stops, which help to trace
 Words far departed from their native place;
 And if a Sentence into parts be split,
 First join those parts, before you construe it:
 By this the middle Sentence will be seen,
 Which lay involv'd those other parts between.
 This and the rest by practice will be plain,
 And noblest Pleasures will reward the pain.

PROSODIA.

CHAP. I:

Of Quantity and Accent.

I. **P**ROSODIA is the right Pronunciation of words according to Quantity and Accent.

II. Quantity is that different measure of Time, wherein Syllables are pronounced long or short.

III. The proportion between a long and short Syllable is that of ($\frac{1}{2}$) two to one, as flammā.

IV. A common Syllable is that which may be long or short, as the Measure of the Verse requires; but in Prose is only short; as, tenēbræ, tenēbræ.

V. A dubious Syllable is that which among the Poets is of an uncertain quantity; as, Connūbia, connūbium, *Virg.* Corallium, *Ovid.* Coralia, *Claud.* Focale, *Virg.* Focale, *Mart.* Liqueſco, *Ovid.* Palus, *Virg.* Palus, *Hor.* Rūbigo, *Virg.* Rūbigo, *Mart.* &c.

1. Altho' Syllables are in general distinguish'd into Long and Short, yet all are not equally long or short; as *amara* compar'd with *amandus*, and *volūter* with *volūcris*, &c. do plainly show. When various sorts of *Motions* or *Notes* are to be express'd, the observation of these lesser inequalities in the measure of Syllables may contribute something to the *beauty* of the Description; as has been noted in some Passages in *Virgil* and of *Homer* before him; but at this day to be so anxiously curious in gageing those minute differences of sound may perhaps seem an elaborate subtilty to the Composer, but will from the generality of Readers scarce purchase so much Admiration, as may answer the pains.

VI. Accent is the raising or falling of the Voice in respect of the usual pitch or middle Tone thereof.

VII. An Accent is of three sorts, Acute, Grave, Inflex. The first is an Elevation, the second a Depression, the third (which is also call'd Circumflex) is a kind of Undulation, or waving of the voice; as, amāre, as if pronounce'd amāare; by rising at the first, and falling at the second a.

1. Of the ancient use of Accents little can be said, for unless some old Roman should rise from the dead, it would be impossible at this day to know, and if known, as impossible by words to describe what it was. *Exempla eorum tradi scriptis non possunt*, says *Quintilian*. The Names and Signature of 'em we still retain, but as there is scarce any use of them in English, so there is but little in the Latine. Onely to mark *Adverbs*, as *verò*, *malè*; and *contriv'd Syllables* or *latent Diphthongs*, as in *masā*, *manus*, *occidit*, *legere*, &c. in which Application they serve rather to denote a distinction of words, or difference of Quantity, than any variation of Tone, for which purpose also they might be fitly used in our own Language; as in *triumph*, *triumph*, *refuse*, *refuse*, &c. and especially in such words, wherein the English, contrary to the custom of the Greeks and Latines, anticipate the seat of Accent, as in *Protector*, *academy*, *melancholy*, *inventory*, &c. were it not that Imitation supplies their absence, and the Ear in this case is a far better Instructor than the Eye. However a profitable use might be made of Accents in writing too, were it only to secure a gracefull Pronunciation already learn'd; provided there were a sufficient number assigned to denote all the most remarkable Movements of the Voice; which are of a far greater variety, than to be express'd onely by these three marks.

2. But besides the Accents proper to single words, there are others of far greater concernment, which affect whole Sentences. By these not onely Nations may be distinguish'd, but every man almost has a Tone of utterance so peculiar to himself, as if it were the individual character of his Complexion. Some naturally breath an Air of Pity, others thunder out indignation as in a Storm: Here soft Insinuation distills like Oil from Lips of Sattin; there the Teeth seem to usurp the Office of the Tongue, and what you hear is not speaking, but grinning. The varieties of this kind are scarce to be enumerated, but may with pleasure and advantage be observ'd by any one, that would attain to some ability in the art of speaking. For hereby it will be perceiv'd, that 'tis not so much the words themselves, as the manner of speaking that strikes the Ear; and that the Passions utter their voice more by Accents, which signify like *universal characters* of the mind; than by any peculiar forms of expression in any Language.

3. And hence it may be observ'd also, that the variations of the voice by *high* and *low*, *long* and *short*, *loud* and *soft* (however they happen to be confounded by some) are all of as different Nature and effects, as the *beats* of a *Drum* are from the *sounds* of a *Trumpet*; or the reading in

one equal or unvaried Tone is from Singing. All the possible diversities of Poetic Feet, together with the changes of *Lead* and *Soft*, the Drum expresses to a wonder; but yet while there is *musicality* in the Sound, there can be no place for Accent. This plain instrument does indeed in one single Tone show what a power there is in *Musical Numbers*, and in the various movements of *Poetic Feet*, and how the Ear is affected with the sudden intermixture of loud and soft Notes; but let the Trumpet tell how far short all these are of the charms of well-tun'd and rightly plac'd Accents. In these consists the Life of Language; these are the Enchantments, which being skilfully applied to well-chosen words, lead all the Passions captive, and surprize the Soul it self in its innermost Recesses.

4. Now altho' this tuning of the voice performs so great a share in the Art of speaking, yet it being perhaps unexpressible by any Notes in the *common Scale*; for as much as the Flexures of the Voice in speaking seem to move upon more nice Divisions of Sound, than those in Singing; therefore this part of Eloquence being not easily reducible to rules of Art, hath (like the wild Musick of the Wood) been left to the Casualty of mere Imitation: and then 'tis no wonder, if it very rarely rises to any remarkable perfection; since Nature in this particular is seldom so happy, as to unite in any one person so many and great Endowments as are necessary to compleat an example worthy of admiration. Yet since the forming of the Voice to apt Inflections and decent Cadences, was the great care of the Ancients, and ought among us to be an early part of ingenuous Education; while the Young is yet flexible, and the natural Vices of Pronunciation are not confirm'd into an incurable habit: 'tis therefore advis'd, that Recitations of the most select Pieces of Poetry and Oratory to be found in the English as well as the Latine Young be frequently repeated, and pronounc'd (as near as may be) with an Air agreeable to the measure, matter and humour of the Composition. This exercise, as it will in several other respects be very beneficial to young Scholars; so by the help of a good Instructor it may contribute to such a laudable degree of gracefull delivery in most occasions of speaking, as altho' short of that perfection, which might be wish'd; yet may at least prevent or cure that loathsome offensiveness of *barking* and *cleating*, *snorting* and *snarling*, *wining* and *croaking*, *craying* and *bellowing*, and such like brutal Depravations of human utterance, as are the *filanous Figures* of the vulgar way of gapeing.

5. To this consideration of Accent, as it affects words in Contexture, does appertain the use of *Pausas* or *Stops*. Such as are the *Comma*, *Colon*; *Semicolon*; *Full point*. Note of *Interrogation*? of *Exclamation*! *Paraphesis* (). Which besides their grammatical use in distinguishing the parts of a Period, and measuring convenient Intervalls for respiration, do direct the Cadences of the Voice in Pronouncing each member of the period, till it compleatly reposes it self in the close. By this it appears, that none of these are dumb Signs, but do correspond to as many various Tones in the Voice, and are in effect so many different Accents of the several parts of a Period.

C H A P. II.

Of discerning the Quantities of Syllables.

Sect. 1. Of the first, middle, and partly final Syllables.

RULE I. Of a Vowel before two Consonants.

Short Vowels (by Position) stretch their Sound,
When 'fore two Consonants or a double sound. *Is.*

1. GAZA nīmīs tēnūEm grAndīs pErfrēgērāt Axem.
2. REllīgīō sīmīlātā mālās hās rEppērīt Artes.
3. OccUlta spōlīPa, Et plūrēs dē pacē triUmphos. *Juv.*
4. FErē cīkī tErRUm, dātē tēLA, scAndirē mūros. *Virg.*

1. In these Examples all the Vowels lengthen'd by Position (that is, by reason of the place where they stand,) are for the Learner's Ease distinguished by Capitals. The cause of their Production is the immediate consecution of two Consonants, which (like a Rub before a Bowl, or a Style in a Travellers way) do so retard their motion, that the Tongue seems to stick some time, before it can pass on to the following Syllable.

2. A double is X or Z (See *Rud. p. 4. n. 8.*) to which you may add J and J consonant, which seems to contain somewhat near the power of *zh*, and lengthens the preceding Vowel; as,

Lati resiliant voces ad sidera celi. Lucret.

Rapula prada, quam praesens Mercurius fert. Hor.

But in *Sijgaw* and other Compounds of *Jags*, it causes no Position.

3. A double Consonant is different from a Consonant doubled; the former expressing a complex Power in a single Character, the latter being the same Consonant repeated. And therefore the Poets sometimes create a Position by the Gemination of a Letter, as in *Religio, repperit*, Ex. 2.

4. In lengthning vowels by Position, it is indifferent whether both Consonants be in the same word, or they be divided between the end of that, and the beginning of the next. Thus in *Grandis*, Ex. 1, both Syllables are long, the first by a necessary, the second by an accidental Position. But if both Consonants begin the following word, as *Occulta spolia*, Ex. 3. and *Teli scandite*, Ex. 4. This is a Position (usual in Greek Verse, but in Latine) rarely admitted.

RULE II. Of a Vowel before a Mute and Liquid.

But if two Consones Mute and Liquid be,

The Vowel's common in its Quantity. *Is.*

1. Nox tenē-bras profert, Phœbus fugat inde tenē-bras.
2. Vir bonus & prudens versus rē-prebendit inertes. *Hor.*
3. Egregio insperfos rē-prendas corpore nixos, *Hor.*

1. Mute

1. Mute Consonants concern'd in Position are these seven, B, C, D, F, G, P, T. Of the Liquids only two, L, (but especially R, for M, N, have this effect only in Greek words. And remember that the *Liquid* must follow the *Mute* for a reason given, *Rad. p. 5. n. 4, 5.* thus *parum* is changeable, but *parum* ever long. The reason of this variable Measure in the Vowel is the different Division of Syllables on each side the *Mute* and *Liquid*: So in Ex. 1. *Tenē-bras* is short, but *Tenē-bras* long: Upon which Account *Martial* has taken the Liberty to shorten a Vowel even before two Mutes; as,

Sardonychas, Sarrā-gdos, Adamantas, jaspides uno.

And therefore when by the Rules of Orthography (See *Rad. p. 5. n. 4, 5.*) the *Mute* and *Liquid* must be divided, as in *āb-luit, āb-vuit*; not *a-b-luit, a-b-vuit*; 'tis thought not so allowable to make the preceding Vowel common; yet *Horace* seems not to regard this nicety, as appears by Ex. 2, 3. in the words *rē-prehensis, rē-pendat*, tho' he was under no necessity of varying the quantity. So *Lucretius* and *Virgil* in the following Examples.

Quæ demersa liquor'e obeunt, rē-rasta videntur. Lucr.

Et rē-lexa prop'e in fummo fluitare videntur. Id.

Talia vociferans gemiru tectu'm omne rē-plebat. Virg.

Primus ades, sed non rē-penda est curia verbis. Id.

2. Here observe also, that though a short Vowel by reason of a *Mute* and *Liquid* following, may be sometimes (and that in Verse only) made long; yet a long one cannot be made short. Thus *āter* black, *frāter* a Brother, *māter* a Mother, *salūter* wholesome, &c. being by Nature or custom long before a single Consonant, do continue so in *ātra, frātris, mātris, salūtris*.

RULE III. Of one Vowel before another in distinct Syllables of the same word.

If in two Syllables Vowels two you see

Contiguous, the former short must be. *Is,*

Filius ipse Dēi moriens tūa menda lūebat.

1. Vowels being of themselves naturally of a nimble Motion, do become much more rapid, when no Consonants are intermix'd among them to abate their swiftness; and therefore seem to run into one another, like shurr'd Notes upon a Violin, which are struck with the same Bow. When by their quicker Pronunciation there happens a *Coalescence* in their Sound, that Mixture produces a *Diphthong* or *ā-vowel*, and then of two sounds singly short is made one long Syllable, Rule 4.

EXCEPTION I. Of a Vowel long before another.

1. But Pronouns (as *Unus*) common are;

Alterius and *Alius* sound as here.

2. Long

1. Long in the Fifth doth E 'twixt two I's stay :
3. So I in *Fis*, if *er* be away.
4. Long's *ēben*. 5. *Is*, Obe change you may.
6. Long are such Vocatives, *Pampēi*, *Cāi* :
7. And Genitives, as *Aula* made *Aulāi*.
8. In *ēius* and *ōius* and *ōūs* too,
- Greek Possessives, with many Nouns also
9. Of Greek descent, make first of Vowels slow.

1. So *illius*, *ipsius*, *totius*, *utrius* ; but *aliquis*, *alterius* change not. *Socius* is usually long, and *neutrius*, *alterutrius* seldom short. Observe also, that Pronouns common in Verse, are (contrary to *Regl.* 4. *Chap.* I.) long in Prose.

2. So *disi*, *faci* ; and therefore *visi*, *spū*, *fidē* must be short.

3. *Fis* was anciently written *Feis* ; but those Vowels being transpos'd in *firrem*, *firi*, became both short.

4. These were once written *Pampēi*, *Cāi*, and the quantity of the Diphthong still remains in the single Vowel.

5. Such Greek Possessives are *Rhodopēus*, *Achelōus*, *Egeus*, *Larēus*, *Myrius*, &c.

6. Greek Nouns of this sort are such, as *Archelāus*, *Nicolāus*, *Eu-māus*, &c. *Lās*, *Nās*, *Prudemās*, &c. *Lycāus*, *Machāus*, &c. *Aquilōus*, *Elegāus*, &c. *Alexandriā*, *Antiochiā*, *Iphigēniā*, *Samariā*, &c. *Casariā*, *Atalā*, &c. *Amphion*, *Ixiom*, *Orion*, &c. *Basilēus*, *Dariū*, *Exegēus*, &c. *Lārtes*, *Pierides*, *Hērā*, *Trāis*, and many others. The Pronunciation of which sometimes follows the quantity, sometimes the Accent of the Original, and is therefore various among the several Nations of Europe, nor perhaps uniform in any one. In a matter so indifferent custom may serve for a rule, which altho' not always exact perhaps, yet to him, that considers *how much more one Grain of prudence is worth, than a whole Cart-load of Pedantry* ; an easy compliance herein will seem more agreeable to the Rules of *English Civility*, tho' it may happen to clash a little with those of the *Greek Trisylla*.

RULE IV. Of Diphthongs or Tri-vowels.

Long are two Vowels in one Syllable ty'd,
Or one expres'd and th'other but imply'd ;
But *Pra* doth 'fore a Vowel nimbly slide. *3s*,

1. *Spē*, *musā*, *fructūsque* ; *manū*, *cui*, *diique* ; *dedere*.

2. *Audī*, *cerne*, *tacē*. *Præeuntis amāque* ; *favorem*.

1. Some Diphthongs are expres'd in one complex character, as *a*, *u* : others by composition of one Vowel to another, as *au*, *eu*, *ei*. Which must be pronounc'd as one Syllable, unless a mark of Separation call'd a *Dialysis* show the contrary, as *Orpheus*, *Orpheus* ; *Dii*, *Dii* ; *Prima*.

a. In all long Syllables there is a *Caeser* diphthong; for in the ancient Orthography, when neither Position, nor two different Vowels lengthened the Syllable, the same Vowel was doubled. Thus *Ejama* was anciently *faama*; *Légi*, *leggi*; *Rama*, *Raama*; *Floa*, *flaa*; *Nihil*, *nill*; *Tibicen*, *tibicen*; or thus, *Dia*, *uila*, *adlia*, &c. Or two different Vowels were contracted into one; as *Spei*, *spe*; *Mafai*, *maia*; *Fractus*, *fructus*; *Mamui*, *manu*; *Quai*, *qui*; So in the three long Conjugations, *Amat*, *amā*; *Mouet*, *mooet*; *Audit*, *audi*; the three *Characteristic Vowels* *A*, *E*, *I*, are by *Crafs* produc'd in all Cases of the Verb; and in the old way of speaking as well as writing, the Quantity of Vowels (now undistinguish'd either way for the most part) was by the Ear and Eye equally discernible. The third *Person Plural* of the *Præterperfect*, *Indic.* in *ira* is long for the reason for mention'd, but that in *cras*, (tho' commonly so pronounc'd) yet is not always so us'd; as,

Matri longa decem tulerunt fastidia menses. Virg.

Miscueruntq; herbas, & non innoxia verba. Id.

Ostendunt, steteruntq; coma, & vox sanctus huius. Id.

Dixit cithara insonsa profueruntq; coma. Tibull.

Dixit rursus defuerunt verba Thalassa mihi. Mart.

After which Authorities, it seems excusable to use the same liberty, rather than by a squeamish refusal of a significant Word, for a supposed defect in the measure; to spoil a good Thought by an ill expression.

RULE V. Of Derivatives and Compound.

1. As Primitive and uncompound be,
Such is deriv'd and compound Quantity:
2. But yet some caution here you must observe,
Far from this Rule of each sort many swerve.

Primitives. Derivatives. Primitives. Derivatives.

Long.	Short.	Short.	Long.
āro-as.	ārista.	Dēcem.	dēnu.
Būbus.	būbulcus.	Fōveo-es.	fomes-itis.
Dis-itis.	ditio-nis.	Hōmo-inis.	hūmānu.
Dico-is.	dican.	Hūmus-i.	hūmū-is.
Differo-is.	disertus.	Jūgum.	jūgūrum.
Dūco-is.	dux-ūcis.	Jocus-i.	jucundus.
Fāri.	fatuus.	Lāteo-es.	lātēna-a.
Fār.	fārma.	Lēgo-is.	lēt-ēgis.
Fido-is.	fides-ēlis.	Lino-is.	litera.
Frāngo-is.	frāgilis.	Mācer.	mācēro-as.
Lūceo-es.	lucerna.	Mōveo-es.	mōbilit.
Mōles.	mōlestus.	Pēnus.	pēnuria.
Māmma-a:	māmilla.	Rēgo-is.	rē-gāla-gina.
Nōtus.	nōta-as-a-a.		rē-gālis-gias.
	ndrābilis.	Sēdis.	fētus.

R

Pis

Primitive.	Derivative.	Primitive.	Derivative.
<i>Long.</i>	<i>Short.</i>	<i>Short.</i>	<i>Long.</i>
Off-æ.	offella.	Sedeo-es.	sedes-ila.
Pōno-is.	pōsui-ūm.	Scipo-as.	spendium.
Sāgio.	sagax.	Tēgo-is.	rigula.
Sōpio-is.	sōper-is.	Vōco-as.	vox-ōcis-cūla.
Signum.	sigillum.	Vōmo-is.	vōmer-ēris.
Servitum-u.	servitū.	Simple.	Compound.
Stāre.	stātum-urū.	Dico-is.	Causi-male-er-ri-dicū.
	stātio-ābilis-tur.		
Tignum.	sigillum.	Nē hilum.	nihilum.
Vādo-is.	vādum.	Nūbo-is.	in-pro-nūba.
Vito-as.	vītium.	Irum sup.	amb-itus, par.
		Jūro-as.	de-pe-jēro.
		Nōtum.	ag-ag-nitum.
		Sōpitus.	sewi-sōpitua.

Some few more there are which
are left to the Learners Observa-
tion.

RULE VI. Of dissyllabic Preterits and Supines.

Long Preterits are and supines too

Of Syllables no more than two.

Exc. 1. *Short six are, Bibi, dēdi, scīdi,
Wish stēti, cūli, fūdi fīdi.*

Exc. 2. *So Qūstūm, dārum, litum, cūvi cūm,
And sātum, sūm, rātum, rūm, itum.*

RULE VII. Of Preterits trissyllabic repeating the first Syllable.

1. *If Preterit stammer, both above sounds are quick,
Unless the latter by Position stick.*

2. *So Cādo cēcīdi, tendo tētēdi;
But Cādo, pēdo, cēcīdi & pēpēdi.*

RULE VIII. Of Supines exceeding two Syllables.

1. *From īvi, itum, and in ūrum slow,
Do Supines Trissyllabic go:*

2. *The rest in itum nimbly slow,
As monitum and praeistum do show.*

RULE IX. Of Prepositions of one Syllable

Long are these six A, E, DE, SE, DI, PRO;

But Ab, ad, ob, in, com, per, sub, re, go

*(Not barr'd) in swifter time; nor is DI slow
In these two words, Disiectus, Dislino.*

Short

Short also: PRO in words eleven;
And long or short in six or seven.

PRO 1. Cella, nepos, fundus, fari, festus, fiteorq;
short. Adde fugus, festus, tervus, sectò, pròficiscor.
PRO 2. Pròcumbo, curro, pròfundo, jungs pròpello,
cum. Sic pulso, pròpago, faciens ginis atque pròpago.

1. *Al, Ad, &c.* not barr'd by a following Consonant, are short. So
is *Re*, unless *Jed* follows, as in *Rijella*, (See Chap. 2. *Aut. n. 2.*) but in *Re*
for it concerns, 'tis no Preposition.

2. *Con* compounding a Verb, that begins with a Vowel, loses *M*, as
Clarids, Cùharis, and *Cùgo* for *cùmgo*: But before a Consonant, it
sometimes takes *N*, as *Cunduo, Cùjicis*, &c.

RULE X. Of Adjectives in INUS.

1. In *inus* *Latine Adjectives* are long;
Except these ten, which follow in a Throng.
2. Craft. diut. prist. perend. *Ag. cedrinus*,
Hornot. serot. oleag. carbasinus.
3. With many *Greeks* which matter do import;
As *Crystall. myrrhinus*; for such are short.

SECT. 2. Of the Penultime (or last Syllable save
one) in Nouns increasing; wherein the increasing Syl-
lable of any oblique Case, is that to which one more is
added, than what was in the Nominative singular or
plural.

RULE 1. Nouns of the second all move swiftly, save
Iber, ibèri, like a Spaniard, grave.

RULE II. The third makes *A, O* long; but *E, I, U*,
In the Penultime swifter flights pursue.

Except. 1. Of *A* short.

1. Nouns Masculine in *AL* and *AR*;
And these, *Hoc Jubar, hepar, nectar, par*;
With its three Compounds, short increasing are.
2. *Fax, trabs*, and all barr'd long 'till Nominatus;
With *Vldis, vas*, make short the Genitive.
3. So *Greeks* in *A*, as *Stemma, stemmatis*;
And those in *AS*, as *Lampas, lampadis*.

Except. 2. Of *O* short.

1. *Greek Nouns* in *ov*, which oblique are in *ois*;
As *Canon, icon, sindon, sindonis*;

2. And Latine Neuters which increase in *is* ;
As *Corpus, æquor, ebur, ebŕis* :
3. To these add Greeks, as *Hector, Hectŕis,*
And *Castor, Nestor, Rhetor, Rhetŕis* :
4. So *Memor, arbor, lepus, Allobrox,*
Scobs, inops, scrobs, Cæcrops & Æthiops,
Bos, cômpos, impos, præcox, Cappadox :
5. The *Cercops, cyclops, hydrops* lengthen'd are :
So *ŕis os*, and Adverbs that compare.

Except 3. Of *E* long.

1. Long are such Genitives as end in *ŕis* ;
As *Ren, Splen, liŕh, firen made fireŕis.*
Ver, manŕues, merces, hieres, loctiplex,
Rex, vervex, præx, fex, seps, plebs, halec, quies.
3. So Greeks in *us* and *us*, long *ŕis* make and *ŕis*,
As *Tapes, tapetis, Crater & Cratŕis.*
But *mulier's* short, tho' sound'd *mullŕis*.

Except 4. Of *I* and *Y* long.

1. Long inis make from *Phorcyn, Salamin* ;
And all of the same Form and Origin ;
2. To which *Dis, apŕis, Samnis* are of kin.
So *Lis, glis, vibex, gryps* with many more
Of various flexures, as use will you show.
3. From *ix*, as *felix, bombyx, lengthen icis* :
But short are *histris, fornix, fornŕis,*
Nix, nŕis, onyx, varix, calix, salix,
Pix, styx & natrix, lapix, coxendix,
Strix, Eryx, filix, Ambiorix, appendix.

Except. 5. Of *U* long.

From *US* form *ŕdis, ŕis, ŕtis* flow ;
Lux, pollux, frŕgis, fur, the same pace go.

RULE III. Of the Penultime in Oblique Plural.

A, E, O, Plural reckon ever long,
And *I, U* short without Exception.

So. 3. Concerning the Quantity of final Syllables.

RULE I. Of Monosyllables in *E, O, IS, US.*

All words that end as *Mŕ, flŕ, lis, mŕs*, do
Of one Syllable, are in their motion slow :

Except.

Except. BUT these Cis, quis, bis, is, & Cē, tē, quē, nē, vē.
(Being Particles affix'd) short-sounded be.

RULE II. Of words in O extending one Syllable.

Count all words common that do end in O;

As Porro, Sermo, Flendo, Monco.

Except. 1. YET Adverbs Adverbi made, and oblique Cases,

With Ergo (faks) and eo stretch their Paces;

So adeo, ideo. 2. Common sedulo,

With crebro, vero, sero, mutuo.

3. These cedo, cito, modo, imo, illico,

Ego, ambo, duo, scio, nescio,

Are never, or but very rarely slow.

RULE III. Of words ending in AS, ES, OS, U, N, I, C, A.

As-es-os, unica are long. BUT these,

Exc. 1. In AS, ES short, if short they do increase;

AS. As anas anatis, and militis from miles.

ES. 2. So es and Compounds, to which reckon penes.

YET aries, abies, pes paries and Ceres

Continue long, tho' short they do increase.

OS. 3. Com-im-pus and os ossis short; and so,

N. 4. An, tamen, in with all their Compounds go.

5. Short are words shortened by Apocope;

As Vidē, vin, and nemō, for nemōne.

6. Count such as Carmen short, for carminis

Increasing short does show, that short it is.

I. 7. Short nil, quis, sicul: BUT ibi

With ubi common are; so mihi, tibi, sibi.

C. 8. Lē, nē and dōnē short. BUT doubtfull measure

To fac and hic, and hoc not Ablative.

(give

A. 9. These five pūa, ita, quia, eja, postea,

With all these Cases that do end in A,

(Save Ablatives) are short. A Numeral

In ginta's short, but mostly long does fall.

7. As feni, so aliquis is short; tho' ubi and ubique be ever long: Videm, Biquis, Bivis never short.

RULE IV. Of words ending in B, L, E, T, R, I, S, D, U, S.

Those words which in Bletridus end,

Their final Syllables do extend.

Exc. 1. YET two nil, Sol, and Hebrew words in EL

L. are long; as Jaël, Gabriël, Daniël.

E. 2. Nemo

- E. 2. Nouns of the fifth in E, as *fidē, diē*,
With Adverbs formed thence, as *hodiē*.
3. Imperatives from *Ecce* long; as *vidē*.
4. Adverbs from Adverbs made; as *avidē*;
So *ferē, ferriē. TET bēnē* and *supernē*
Are always short, with *mālē* and *infernē*.
- R. 5. *Fār, lār* and all the Compounds made of *pār*;
As *In-com-dis-pār*, long reputed are.
So *ēr* in Nouns made *ēris* long; BUT these
Long *athēr, aēr* are, though short *th'* increase.
- IS. 6. Long is each oblique Case that ends in IS:
So *Nom'natives*; as *Sammis, Simōis*,
Whereof the Genitive long-founded is.
- US. 7. So US count long *i'th'* *Nom'natives*,
When U grows long *i'th'* Genitive.
8. Long of the fourth in US all Cases are,
But that which names or calls *i'th'* singular.
9. *Cui* is often short; nor are *respondi, salvi, valē, vidē* always long.
7. *Grū, sū* are long (by *Señ. 3. Rul. 1.*) and so are *grūs, sūs* notwithstanding the Vowels following. *Triū* in *tripōdis* keeps the quantity of the Greek Diphthong; but *Oedip' ū, Poly' ū, &c.* conform to the Latin Rule.

**RULE V. At Verses end if a short Syllable be,
'Tis counted of a doubtful Quantity.**

Thus far of the Quantities of Latin words, the Greek are left to their own proper Rules in the *Greek Prosodia*, where the reason of their measures will be best understood. Their variation from the Latin Rules, as they occur in reading (which will not be often) the Learner may observe, and with his Pen mark their quantity; which it will be convenient also to do in any other word, especially in *Prose*, where he may be most liable to mistake. The use of these Rules being not so much intended for Versifying, as true Pronunciation, wherein to avoid a fault is not so great commendation, as it would be a fault to commit one. And because the reading of Poets will conduce much to a security in Pronunciation, and if a due choice be made, enrich the Fancy with many beautiful *Ideas* of things, as well as furnish the Judgment with great variety of Notions, usefull chiefly in the more serious and severe concerns of Life; here is therefore added a brief account of *Poetical Measures* in the more usual form of Verse, that such as by a less happy Nature are not capable of being Poets themselves, may yet be taught so far to relish Numbers, as to enjoy the Conversation of those noble Wits with some pleasure and advantage; and those other, whose too luxuriant Imagination has by a more unhappy Fate been doom'd to the perpetual Slavery of versifying, may at least be admitted to the consolation of knowing their final Destiny by reading their Neck-verse.

Mumidae nullas ipse reliquit opes.

CHAP.

C H A P. III:

Of Versifying.

I A Verse is an orderly train of Measures confin'd to a certain Number of Feet.

II A Foot is a distinct Movement of two or three Syllables in each Step or Cadence of a Verse.

III Dissyllabic Feet are, The Trissyllabic are,

Spondé	Coelum.	Moloss	Cœlestes.
Pirric	Pis.	Tribrac	Dominus.
Troché	ardet.	Dactyl	elligit.
Iambic	amans.	Anapest	animas.

1. As many ways as quantities may be varied by being compounded and transpos'd, so many different Feet from two even to six Syllables, and all under distinct Names have been contriv'd by the Great Poets to the number of full 124. Concerning the Nature and Use of this great variety of Measures there are very different Sentiments, (as it usually happens, when things either are not or cannot be understood,) but 'tis generally agreed, that those of two and three Syllables, into which all the rest are resolvable, may be sufficient to explicate all Poetic Measures.

2. Of those eight above mention'd the *Spondé* and *Dactyl* are most considerable, as being the Measures of the *Heroic* or *Hexameter* Verse, wherein *Homer* and *Virgil* the Princes of Greek and Latin Poets did chuse to write. These two Feet are of an equal time, but different Movement. The *Spondé* has an even, strong and steddý Pace, and (to illustrate it by an obvious instance) represents the Steps of a trotting Horse. *Virgil* applies it aptly to express the slow and heavy Blows of the *Cyclops* in forming Thunderbolts.

Ille iter sese magnâ vi brachia tollit.

In numerum

With vast Force they in turn their Arms up heave.

3. The *Dactyl* imitates the brisk Motion and nimbler strokes of the *Gallop*, and therefore the same Poet, who was very lucky in a poem-modeling his Measures to the Motions intended to be express'd by 'em, chose this Foot for that purpose.

Quadrupedante putrem sonitu quatit ungula campum.

The Ground rebounding danc'd to the prancing Hoof.

4. An inverted *Dactyl* becomes an *Anapest*, a very sprightly Foot, of a Movement proper to excite and enrage, and a frequent stroke on the *Drum* in beating a point of War. This also is by *Tully* added to the *Dactyl* and *Spondé* under the Name of an *Heroic* Foot. *De Orat. lib. 3.*

5. Of the same Nature, but in a less degree is the *Iambic*. A lively measure it is, and that which reigns most in our English Poetry.

6 The

6. The *Træbè* is quite contrary to the *Iambic*, partaking something of the humour of the *Dactyl*, but less brisk, fit to express weak and languid Motions, as all those Measures are, which move from long to short Syllables. There's a sort of English Verse compos'd of this Foot, and of an *Air* very agreeable to some Subjects.

7. The *Pirric* and *Itriac* are very rapid, as the *Moloss* is slow and heavy, for which reason there is less use made of them, tho' these also may have their proper places in Poetical, as well as Musical Compositions: And 'tis by the Principles of *Harmonics*, that the suitableness of these, or indeed any other Measures in Poetry should be examin'd, if the effect would reward the Labour of the Inquiry.

IV. In Hexameter or Heroic contains six Feet; any one of the four first may be either *Dactyl* or *Spondé*; the fifth a *Dactyl*, and the last a *Spondé*.

1. In the fifth place a *Spondé* is sometimes found; as,

Chārā dēum sōbōlēs māgnūm Jōvis incēmētūm.

And in this Verse of *Virgil* there seems intended a *Dipirric* or *Præsenfatic*.

Ædificant, sēctāq; intexunt ābiēsē costās.

The time is the same, and no force upon the word by reading *abjete*.

V. In Elegiac or Pentameter consists of five Feet; either of the two first a *Dactyl* or *Spondé*, then a long Syllable at the end of a Word; after this two *Dactyls* with another long Syllable at the Close, which with the former evens the Measure.

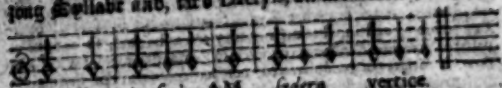
1. It appears by a passage in *Quintilian*, that a *Pentameter* was anciently resolv'd into other Feet; whereof the two first were as before, the third a *Spondé*, and the two last *Anapaests*; which makes a great difference in the Movement of the Verse. But the resolving it into the Heroic Feet, being more agreeable to the Hexameter, with which 'tis alternately joyn'd, and being also easier to the Learner, 'twill be best to scan it according to these Measures.

The Scanning of the Hexameter and Pentameter.

Carmina fassu—rus me—turi tempora dissi—

Quin me—si—re tu—OS tu mori—ture di—ES.

VI. An Asclepiad consists of a Spondé, Dactyl, a long Syllable and, two Dactyls, all invariable; as,



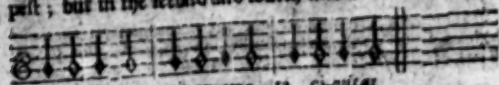
1. The Addition of one Syllable at the close turns an Asclepiad into a Pentameter.

VII. A Sapphic consists of a Troché, Spondé, a Dactyl, and two Trochés. A Poem of this sort is composed in a Stanza of three Sapphics and an Adonic, which contains the two last Feet of an Hexameter; as,



Pinus, & cel—sa gravi—ora casu
Deci—dunt tur—res, feri—untque fummos
Fulmina, montes.

VIII. An Iambic, if pure, consists only of six Iambics. The mixt changes the Iambic Foot in the first, third and fifth places, into a Spondé, Tribrac or Anapest; but in the second and fourth into a Tribrac only.



Peta—mus ar—va di—vitas & in—sular.

1. How the Verses above are commonly scan'd, the Bars showing the Spaces or intervals of Elision and Position (as the ancients expressed it,) and the distinguishing Characters in the words to be measured will make obvious to the first view. Every Bar contains a Measure to be divided by *aprior* and *Sequitur*, the habit moving up and down, as *Hieracii minimata*.
Legitimamque sonum digitis callamus & aure.

The Heroic, Elegiac and the pure Tribrac Iambic proceed to the close in even Measures, if the rest appear (as they are) very odd to us, 'tis (it may be) because our Ears do not hear the same sounds in reading, nor our Fingers use the same beats in measuring as the Romans did. The Trochee at the end of a Sapphic Verse seems scarce allowable; for altho' a short Syllable at the close may be made long, yet for that very reason a long one cannot be shorten'd. To divide words into Feet, and that in various manners is no difficulty; there's no Prose, but at this rate may

may be resolv'd into some sort of Verse or other. Even the Dutch have done this after the Example of those *Quintillian* mentions in his time, *In adeis multis incidimus Grammaticis, qui Lyricorum Carmina in varias mensuras ceperunt.* But what Feet *Horace* intended in several of his Compositions, and in what manner they are to be read, so as to be capable of melodious Numbers, may even to sound like mere poetical Measures, is a secret not yet discovered, nor perhaps worth the finding out. But if in *Ancient Music* the Quantity of each Syllable (as 'tis pretended) prescrib'd the time to the Notes, it would be inquir'd by what Proportions of Percussion (as *Tully* calls it) these ancient Measures were to be adjusted. If any for the Reputation of their Eye-sight will pretend to see a *Dragon in the Clouds*, they may enjoy their fancy, but there are not a few of those *Lyric Compositors*, which move so little like ordinary Numbers, that there seems much more of Consistency even in the common Periods of *Tully*. 'Tis his own reflection, *A modis quibusdam, carum remota, saluta esse videtur oratio; maximèq; id in optimo quoq; carum potissimum, quod aptius à gratia nominatur, quos cum cantu spoliaveris, nulla pars remanet oratio.* And a little after, *Nisi cum Tibicen accessu, orationi sunt saluta simillima.* *Ad Brut. Orator.* How well they might go off in a Ballad is left to trial, but even then the Praise would be due more to the Piper than the Poet.

Of certain Peculiarities to be noted in the scanning of Verses.

1. Observe that a Vowel, either with or without *M* at the end of a word, (and sometimes of a Verse) is lost, when the Word or Verse following begins with *H* or a Vowel, as,

1. *Sera nimis vis' est crastina, vis' hodie.*

2. *Monstr' horrend' infern' ingens, cui lumen ademptum.*

The former is call'd *Synalapha*, the latter *Eclipsis*, yet sometimes both are dispens'd with, and especially in these words, *Hæc, O, Ah, &c.* as,

1. *Hæc! ubi pacta fides? ubi quæ jurare solebas? Ovid.*

2. *O pater, O hominum divumq; æterna potestas! Virg.*

3. *Ah ego non possum tanta videre mala, Tibul.*

4. *Et his lo Arethusa, lo Arethusa vocavit. Virg.*

5. *Et succus pecori, & lac subducitur agnis, Virg.*

6. *Corporum officium est quoniam premer'e omne deorum. Lucr.*

Sometimes also by the omission of a *Synalapha* the preceding Vowel or Diphthong is shortened, as,

1. *Credimus an quæ amant, ipsi sibi somnia fingunt. Virg.*

2. *Nomen & arma locum servant. Tè amice nequivi. Id.*

3. *Implerunt montes, fierunt Rhodopæa arces. Id.*

2. One Vowel before another in the same word is either lost, or melts into one Syllable with the latter. This is call'd *Synæresis*, as,

1. *Præcipuè sanus nisi cùm pituita molest'a est. Hor.*

2. *Unâ eadēq; viâ sanguisq; animusq; feruntur. Virg.*

3. When the last Syllable of a word begins a new Foot, after any Cadence in the Verse, 'tis sometimes allow'd to gain one time by it, as,

1. *Castaneæ fagor (or fagu) ornusq; incanuit albo
Flore pyri ———— Virg.*

2. *Syderaquæ, ventiq; nocent, avidaq; volucres.*

This *Synæresis* of a word just before the last Syllable is call'd *Cæsura*, and besides its effect as to the quantity, 'tis of a more general Concernment in Versifying, upon the account of it's use in chaining words together, as they move thro' the Measures of the Verse, as,

Sponte su-â nume-ror car-men veni-ebat ad aptos:

Quicquid cona-bar dicere versus erat. Ovid.

The more of these Sections there are in a Verse, the more smoothly will the Measures flow, and altogether as harsh and rude where they are wanting, as,

Versus semper scabros reddit Sectio nulla.

4. From the common Rules may be observ'd in reading some other Variations, wherein the Latin Poets departing from the Laws of their own *severer Muse* have sometimes, and upon an Exigence reliev'd themselves by a Licence from the Greeks. And what liberty in their own *native Tongue*, the *Romans* thought fit to take, cannot without too much Rigor be deny'd to them, who besides the disadvantage of learning a dead Language by hard Study, have no other rule at this day but the Imitation of them, who goe it onely by prating.

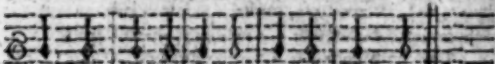
An Appendix concerning English Poetry.

Since in the former parts of the Grammar the English Tongue was all along consider'd as well as the Latin, to the end that both might be attain'd by one and the same Labour, and that just reproach, henceforth silenc'd of *purchasing a dead Language at the expence of the Living*: It will be agreeable to the same Method, and conducive to the same design, to conclude the *Latin Prefidia* with some short observations concerning our English Poetry.

1. The English, tho' not so strictly ty'd up to Quantities as the Latin, yet has it Measures and Accents very capable of Poetic Numbers, but in a manner not altogether so arbitrary, as not to complain loudly against the Composer, that shall unskillfully put them together. This will be easily discern'd by comparing some of the *elder Composers* with some of later date, especially those of Mr. Dryden, who is one among the first,

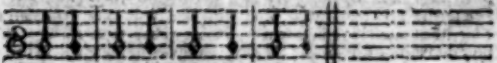
that taught the English Tongue to move with that ease and insensible Smoothness, and with such brightness of Expression, too, that the thought at first glance sparkles in the very Eyes of the Reader, and instead of needing an Interpreter, creates an understanding. The English Poesy is certainly much indebted to some of our late Writers, and to might the English Mores too, had their case been no less religious as to the Sense, than it was of the Rhime, but in this they are left to their Repentance, or a *lighter Confess*, before which no Wit will pass for Merit, nor the most regular Measures in Verse atone for those breaches upon Virtue and Religion.

2. As to the Feet that most prevail in English Poetry, it is very observable, that though our words in common speaking do (by the Influence of the *Accent*) generally run in the Measures of the *Traché*, *Dactyl*, and sometimes the last *Pæon* or *Trachépæon*; all which move from long to quicker time; yet in Verse we most of all affect the contrary Motion of the *Iambic*. As by Musical Notes will best appear.



If Pulse of Verse a Na—tions tem—per shows,
In keen I—am—bic Eng—lish Me—ter flows.

In most of our Compositions, tho' other Feet be often intermix'd, yet the brisker Cadence of the *Iambic* so over-takes them all, that they scarce become perceptible. There is however one sort of Verse to be excepted, which runs much upon the *Traché*, and has a strange appeal for *Baroque*, and all Subjects treated in *rhilicula*; as,



Why so frolick? why so, merry?
Is your Noddle full of Sherry?

3. The Number of Feet in English Verse is from six to one. That of five is call'd the *Heroic*. The *Hexameter* if rightly divided, has a great and stately pause; it seems too slow for a continued Composition, but closes a Stanza excellently. Those of shorter Measure are either variously mixt, as in the *Diadark*, or cast into regular Stanzas; great varieties of which may be seen in Dr. *Mossford's* elaborate Translation of the *Psalms*, Mr. *Cowley*, Mr. *Cotton* and others. There is a Verse also that admits a half Foot or odd Syllable which commonly runs in *Traché* Measure, and is very proper upon some occasions; as,

What more wouldst thou have of me?

Love or Death should set me free.

4. The final Syllables of English Verse make another difference upon the account of Rhime; and that either as dispos'd in *Couplets*, *Triplets* or *Alternates*; and sometime at greater distance, yet not so as to be out of hearing. Of these the Learner may find Examples enough in the Books

Books above mention'd. These Rhimes are often double, sometimes triple; when two or three Syllables correspond to as many others in like Sound. But these ought not to be frequent in grave Compositions, so far as much as they favour of the *Baroque*, and naturally express something ridiculous. The incomparable Butler has judiciously apply'd them in but *Madrigals*; a Piece that will live as long, as men have Wit enough to understand, or honesty to dare to read it.

A good Poem may indeed be made without Rhime, witness that noble work of Mr. Milton, call'd *Paradise Lost*; but then the Verse must lose much of that *Emphatical Sound*, which attends the final Syllables.

For Rhime the Rudder is of Verse

By which, like Ships, they steer their course. Butler.

There is somewhat naturally charming in the Union, and the mockery pleases, as in the returns of an Echo. The *European Languages* being not so well adapted to variety of *Poetic Measures*, have endeavour'd to cover or compensate that defect by a *figurative Sound* in the close; and some would persuade us, that the Psalmist refus'd not this Ornament in his divine Poem. That there are Rhimes in the sacred Text, and Cadences bearing some resemblance with the modern Poetry, is obvious; but whether design'd or casual let the Rabbi's determine. Now altho' this constraint may have sometimes perhaps marr'd a good Expression; yet much oftner has the hunting for a suitable Rhime Parted an unexpected thought; and the fancy being over-chaf'd, and driven to a strait, has out-done its first design, and been surpris'd at its own flight. Nor is it impossible, but the *Paradise* may admit a second cultivation, and perhaps receive new Beauties from another *Dress*, at least be generally read with more pleasure; and which is no small benefit of Rhime, be retain'd with more ease. Of which (*with a hearty wish for Peace to all the World*) take this short Essay upon that Passage. *Book 2. p. 42. Edit. Lond. 1674.*

O shame to men! Devil with Devil damn'd,

Firm concord hold, Men onely disagree, &c.

O shame! O curse! O more than Hellish spight!

Damn'd Devils with each other never fight.

Tho' God bids peace with promises of Life,

Men onely reason arm for deadly strife;

By bloody Wars earth making desolate,

And sacrificing thousands to their hate;

As if no spight besides could them annoy,

They Hell assist, each other to destroy.

But Hell may sleep, nor find its work undone;

To Man no Devil's worse than Man alone.

To conclude, If to an English-man *Latin Poetry* be thought any accomplishment, the *English* may at least be allow'd to be some Ornament, and ought in young Scholars to be so far encouraged, as it conduces to the exercise of a gracefull Utterance, and the forming also of a decent Stile in *Prose* composures. From the learned Languages we derive that Art and Skill which enables men for the highest Employments, for which reason the study of them will be necessary, as long as *good Sense* is esteem'd in the world, but yet after all the *Greek* and *Roman* Authors are read, the main of all our business is perform'd in our own Language, in *English* we eat and drink, buy and sell, in *English* we live, and when all's done at last must die in *English*.

T H E E N D.

Before the Book be read, the Scholar is desir'd with
his Pen to amend these few mistakes.

In the Rudiments.

PAGE 5. for *Sardonychas* read *Sardonychas*. P. 54. Col. 2. between *Flas* and *Gras* there is omitted *Fructus, fructus*, To enjoy, which may be inserted at the Foot of the Column after *Tribus*.

In the Syntax.

PAGE 1. for *wherefore* r. *whereof*. P. 8. for *Question* r. *Question*. Ib. for *Pernicia* r. *Pernicia*. Ibid. for *made* r. *made*. P. 31. Col. 2. for *under* r. *under*.

In the Prosodia.

PAGE 11. for *ever* read *never*.

*School-Books printed for, and sold by A. and J.
Churchill in Pater-Noster-Row.*

Holyoakes large Dictionary, fol.

Lloyd Dict. histor. poet. geograph. fol.

Screvelii Lexicon enlarged by Robertson, 4°.

Screvelii Lexicon 8°. by Hill.

The Cambridge Dictionary, 4°.

Cole Dictionary, 8°. English and Latin.

Heribord Melatamata Philosophiz, 4°.

Duhamel opera Philosoph. 4°.

Several Authors cum notis Delphinis, 8°.

Sophocles gr. lat. 8°.

Homeri Iliads gr. lat. 8°.

Poetæ minoris, 8°. gr. lat.

Cambridge Phrases.

Nomenclatura several sorts.

Flavissæ poeticæ, 8°.

Textor's epithets. 8°.

Barclay argenis. 8°.

Hill's Dionysius. 8°.

Goveani Logici. 8°.

Langly Rhetoric. 8°.

Heribordi Logica.

Burgredicii Logica.

Luben Clayis, gr. linguz.

Pomponius Mela sytu orbis.

Posselii Syntaxis.

Vossii elementa rhetoricæ.

Barronii Metaph. 12°.

Robertson Manipulus ling. sancta, 8°.

Marshall Catechism printed at Oxon, 8°.

Greek Bible, 12. Camb. Field print.

—— Common Prayer, 12.

—— Apocrypha.

—— Testament, 12.

Lat. Testament, 12:

—— 24.

Isocrates orationis &, epistolæ interp. Hyron. Wolfii gr.

lat. Camb. 12.

The.

Thesaurus poeticus.
 Gradus ad Parnassum.
 Minellin's Notes on Several Authors.
 Farnabius's Notes on several Authors.
 Sleidan quatuor Imperlis.
 Heb. Psalter by Robertson. 12°.
 Sallust. 12. Camb.
 Lucius florus, 12. Camb.
 Textor Dialoges.
 Ars cogitandi, 8°.
 Le Clerc Logica.
 Lucretii faber 12°.
 Bond Horace.
 Seneca Trajedies.
 Helvici Collaq.
 Quintus Curtius.
 Cæsar commentaries.
 Tacitus histor.
 Con. Nepos vitis illustr.
 Justin histor.
 Val. Maximus.
 Anacreon.
 Amoris effigies.
 Persius Bond.
 Æsop Fables, gr.
 ——— Gr. lat.
 ——— Eng. and Latin.
 Æsop eng. and lat. after a new manner in an interlinea-
 ry way now in the Press.
 Livii orationes 12°.
 Ciceronis epistolæ selectæ.
 English Examples.
 ——— Expositor.
 Sylva Synonimorum.
 Perkin's Catechise.
 Dugard Rudiments.
 L. Annæi Senecæ Philosophi Sententiæ morales præcipuæ.
 Bibles, Common Prayers, Testaments of several sizes.
 Assembly Cat.
 Idem Proofs.

